

10/052824

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau

#2

## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : <b>A61K 31/40, 31/565</b>		A1	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 99/59581</b> (43) International Publication Date: 25 November 1999 (25.11.99)
(21) International Application Number: <b>PCT/US99/10217</b>			(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).
(22) International Filing Date: <b>11 May 1999 (11.05.99)</b>			
(30) Priority Data: <b>09/079,561</b> 15 May 1998 (15.05.98) US			
(71) Applicant: AMERICAN HOME PRODUCTS CORPORATION [US/US]; Five Giralta Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US).			
(72) Inventors: PICKAR, James, Harrison; 816 Crum Creek Road, Springfield, PA 19064 (US). KOMM, Barry, Samuel; 1506 Melrose Avenue, Havertown, PA 19083 (US).			
(74) Agents: ECK, Steven, R.; American Home Products Corporation, Patent Law Dept.- 2B, One Campus Drive, Parsippany, NJ 07054 (US) et al.			
		Published	
			<i>With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>
(54) Title: 2-PHENYL-1-[4-(2-AMINOETHOXY)-BENZYL]-INDOLE IN COMBINATION WITH ESTROGENS			
<p style="text-align: center;">(I)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">(II)</p>			
(57) Abstract			
<p>The present invention relates to new formulations containing one or more estrogens and 2-phenyl-1-[4-(2-aminoethoxy)benzyl]-Indole compounds which are useful as estrogenic agents, as well as pharmaceutical compositions and methods of treatment utilizing these compounds, which have general structures (I) or (II).</p>			

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia			SG	Singapore		

## 5 2-PHENYL-1-[4-(2-AMINOETHOXY)-BENZYL]-INDOLE IN COMBINATION WITH ESTROGENS

10 The present invention relates to the use of new 2-Phenyl-1-[4-(2-Aminoethoxy)-Benzyl]-Indole compounds which are useful as estrogenic agents, in conjunction with estrogens, as well as pharmaceutical compositions and methods of treatment utilizing these compounds.

Background of the Invention

15 The use of hormone replacement therapy for bone loss prevention in post-menopausal women is well preceded. The normal protocol calls for estrogen supplementation using such formulations containing estrone, estriol, ethynodiol, 17 $\beta$ -estradiol, esterified estrogens, or conjugated estrogens isolated from natural sources (i.e. Premarin<sup>®</sup> conjugated estrogens from Wyeth-Ayerst) or synthetic estrogens. In some patients, therapy may be contraindicated due to the proliferative effects of unopposed estrogens (estrogens not given in combination with progestins) have on uterine tissue. This proliferation is associated with increased risk for endometriosis and/or endometrial cancer. The effects of unopposed estrogens on breast tissue are less clear, but are of some concern. The need for estrogens which can 20 maintain the bone sparing effect while minimizing the proliferative effects in the uterus and breast is evident. Certain nonsteroidal antiestrogens have been shown to maintain bone mass in the ovariectomized rat model as well as in human clinical trials. Tamoxifen (sold as Novadex<sup>®</sup> brand tamoxifen citrate by Zeneca Pharmaceuticals, Wilmington, Delaware), for example, is a useful palliative for the treatment of breast 25 cancer and has been demonstrated to exert an estrogen agonist-like effect on the bone, in humans. However, it is also a partial agonist in the uterus and this is cause for some concern. Raloxifene, a benzothiophene antiestrogen, has been shown to stimulate uterine growth in the ovariectomized rat to a lesser extent than Tamoxifen while maintaining the ability to spare bone. A suitable review of tissue selective estrogens is 30 seen in the article "Tissue-Selective Actions Of Estrogen Analogs", *Bone* Vol. 17, No. 35 4, October 1995, 181S-190S.

- 2 -

5        The use of indoles as estrogen antagonists has been reported by Von Angerer, Chemical Abstracts, Vol. 99, No. 7 (1983), Abstract No. 53886u. Also, see, J.Med.Chem. 1990, 33, 2635-2640; J.Med.Chem. 1987, 30, 131-136. Also see Ger. Offen., DE 3821148 A1 891228 and WO 96/03375. These prior art compounds share structural similarities with the present compounds, but are functionally different. For 10 compounds containing a basic amine, there is no phenyl group to rigidify the side chain.

WO A 95 17383 (Karo Bio AB) describes indole antiestrogens with long straight chains. Another related patent WO A 93 10741 describes 5-Hydroxyindoles 15 with a broad range of side chains. WO 93/23374 (Otsuka Pharmaceuticals, Japan) describes compounds sharing structural similarities with those of the present invention, except with the structure referred to as R<sub>3</sub> in the present formulas I and II, below, is defined as thioalkyl and the reference discloses no such compounds having chains from the indole nitrogen having the same structure as the ones provided by the present 20 invention.

In their article *Postmenopausal Hormone replacement therapy with estrogen periodically supplemented with antiestrogen*, Am. J. Obstet. Gynecol., Vol. 140, No. 7, 1981, pp. 787-792, Kauppila et al. describe their study of postmenopausal estrogen 25 therapy of seven-week estrogen regimens followed by 10-day treatments with the antiestrogen clomiphene citrate.

Also, in their article *Comparison of Megestrol Acetate and Clomiphene Citrate as Supplemental Medication in Posmenopausal Oestrogen Replacement Therapy*, Arch. 30 Gynecol. (1983) 234:49-58, Kauppila et al. describe combination therapies in postmenopausal women of estrogen with random supplementation of megestrol acetate or clomiphene citrate.

U.S. Patent No. 4,894,373 (Young) teaches the use of antiestrogens, including 35 clomiphene and its isomers, citrates and derivatives, in the absence of estrogen for treating menopausal symptoms and treating or preventing osteoporosis. U.S. Patent No. 5,552,401 (Cullinan et al.) describes benzothiophene compounds as useful for the treatment of various medical indications associated with post-menopausal syndrome,

5 and uterine fibroid disease, endometriosis, and aortal smooth muscle cell proliferation, the compounds being used in pharmaceutical formulations optionally containing estrogen or progestin. U.S. Patents Nos. 5,646,137 and 5,591,753 (both issued to Black et al.) discloses methods of treating osteoporosis with formulations of raloxefine-type arylbenzothiophene compounds in conjunction with a progestin selected from  
10 medroxyprogesterone, norethindrone or norethynodrel, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof. U.S. Pat. No. 5,550,107 (Labrie) claims an invention comprising the treatment of breast or endometrial cancer with an antiestrogen together with at least one compound selected from the group of an androgen, a progestin, at least one inhibitor of sex steroid formation, especially 17 $\beta$ -hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase and aromatase  
15 activity, at least one inhibitor of prolactin secretion, one inhibitor of growth hormone secretion and one inhibitor of ACTH secretion. U.S. Pat. No. 5,672,609 (Bryant et al.) discloses pyridine compounds useful in treating post menopausal syndrome and formulations therefore containing estrogen or progestin. U.S. Pat. No. 5,534,527 (Black et al.) teaches the use of aroylbenzothiophenes and estrogens in the inhibition of  
20 bone loss.

#### Description of the Invention

25 The present invention provides pharmaceutical formulations, and methods for using them, comprising compounds of formulas (I) and (II), below, in conjunction with estrogens, preferably in conjunction with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or excipients. Among the uses of the present formulations is alleviating the symptoms of post-menopausal syndrome in women, including peri-menopausal and post-menopausal symptoms. The present formulations and methods of treatment can  
30 be used to minimize undesirable side effects of estrogen treatment or therapy and may be used to minimize the amounts of estrogen(s) necessary for a particular regimen.

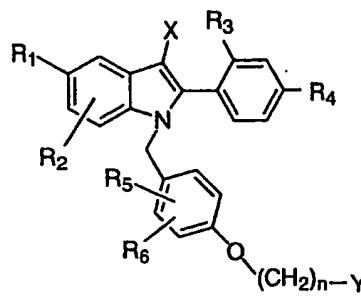
35 Compounds of the general structure type shown in formulas (I) and (II) are estrogen agonists/antagonists useful for the treatment of diseases associated with estrogen deficiency and are disclosed in EP-A-0802183 published 22 October 1997, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference. The compounds are capable of antagonizing the effects of 17 $\beta$ - estradiol while showing little uterine stimulation when dosed alone.

- 4 -

5

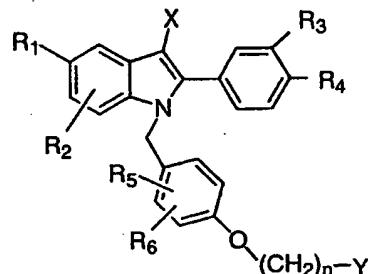
The present invention includes, in conjunction with one or more estrogens, the use of compounds of formulas (I) or (II), below:

10



(I)

or



(II)

wherein:

15 R<sub>1</sub> is selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> esters (straight chain or branched) or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> (straight chain or branched or cyclic) alkyl ethers thereof, or halogens; or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> halogenated ethers including trifluoromethyl ether and trichloromethyl ether.

20 R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> are independently selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> esters (straight chain or branched) or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkyl ethers (straight chain or branched or cyclic) thereof, halogens, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> halogenated ethers including trifluoromethyl ether and trichloromethyl ether, cyano, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl (straight chain or branched), or trifluoromethyl, with the proviso that, when R<sub>1</sub> is H, R<sub>2</sub> is not OH.

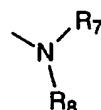
X is selected from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, cyano, nitro, trifluoromethyl, halogen;

n is 2 or 3;

Y is selected from:

25

a) the moiety:



wherein R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are independently selected from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or phenyl optionally substituted by CN, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl (straight chain or branched), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy (straight chain or branched), halogen, -OH, -CF<sub>3</sub>, or -OCF<sub>3</sub>; or R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are concatenated together as -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-, wherein p is an integer of from 2 to 6, preferably 4

5 to 6, the ring so formed is optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, trifluoromethyl, halogen, hydrogen, phenyl, nitro and -CN;

10 b) a five-membered saturated, unsaturated or partially unsaturated heterocycle containing up to two heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, -N=, and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected from hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN-, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>-, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, wherein R<sub>1</sub> is as defined above or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl;

15 c) a six-membered saturated, unsaturated or partially unsaturated heterocycle containing up to two heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, -N=, and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H-, -CN-, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>-, -NH<sub>2</sub>-, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>-, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>-, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl;

20 d) a seven-membered saturated, unsaturated or partially unsaturated heterocycle containing up to two heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, -N=, and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H-, -CN-, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>-, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl;; or

5 e) a bicyclic heterocycle containing from 6-12 carbon atoms either  
bridged or fused and containing up to two heteroatoms selected from the group  
consisting of -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of  
from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected from the  
group consisting of hydrogen, hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>  
10 alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>  
alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>-, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>  
alkylamino, di(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl  
optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>) alkyl;  
15 and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

The more preferred formulations of this invention are those having, along with one or more pharmaceutical carriers or excipients:

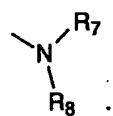
20 a) one or more estrogens; and  
b) one or more compounds selected from the general structures I or II,  
above, wherein:

$R_1$  is selected from H, OH or the  $C_1$ - $C_{12}$  esters or alkyl ethers thereof, halogen;

$R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and  $R_6$  are independently selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> esters or alkyl ethers thereof, halogen, cyano, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or trihalomethyl, preferably trifluoromethyl, with the proviso that, when  $R_1$  is H,  $R_2$  is not OH;

X is selected from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, cyano, nitro, trifluoromethyl, halogen;

Y is the moiety



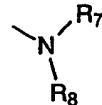
R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are selected independently from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or combined by - (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-, wherein p is an integer of from 2 to 6, so as to form a ring, the ring being optionally substituted by up to three substituents selected from the group of hydrogen, hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> dialkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NHCO(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl and -NO<sub>2</sub>; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

5

The rings formed by a concatenated R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub>, mentioned above, may include, but are not limited to, aziridine, azetidine, pyrrolidine, piperidine, hexamethyleneamine or heptamethyleneamine rings.

10

The most preferred compounds of the present formulations are those having the structural formulas I or II, above, wherein R<sub>1</sub> is OH; R<sub>2</sub> - R<sub>6</sub> are as defined above; X is selected from the group of Cl, NO<sub>2</sub>, CN, CF<sub>3</sub>, or CH<sub>3</sub>; and Y is the moiety



15

and R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are concatenated together as -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-, wherein r is an integer of from 4 to 6, to form a ring optionally substituted by up to three substituents selected from the group of hydrogen, hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NHCO(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl and -NO<sub>2</sub>; and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

25

In another embodiment of this invention, when R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are concatenated together as -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-, wherein p is an integer of from 2 to 6, preferably 4 to 6, the ring so formed is optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, trifluoromethyl, halogen, phenyl, nitro and -CN.

The invention includes sulfate, sulfamates and sulfate esters of phenolic groups.

30

Sulfates can be readily prepared by the reaction of the free phenolic compounds with sulfur trioxide complexed with an amine such as pyridine, trimethylamine, triethylamine, etc. Sulfamates can be prepared by treating the free phenolic compound with the desired amino or alkylamino or dialkylamino sulfamyl chloride in the presence of a suitable base such as pyridine. Sulfate esters can be prepared by reaction of the free phenol with the desired alkanesulfonyl chloride in the presence of a suitable base such as pyridine. Additionally, this invention includes compounds containing

- 8 -

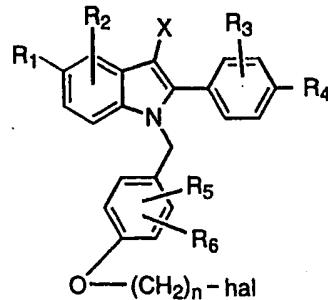
5      phosphates at the phenol as well as dialkyl phosphates. Phosphates can be prepared by reaction of the phenol with the appropriate chlorophosphate. The dialkylphosphates can be hydrolyzed to yield the free phosphates. Phosphinates are also claimed where the phenol is reacted with the desired dialkylphosphinic chloride to yield the desired dialkylphosphinate of the phenol.

10

The invention includes acceptable salt forms formed from the addition reaction with either inorganic or organic acids. Inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, hydroiodic acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, nitric acid useful as well as organic acids such as acetic acid, propionic acid, citric acid, maleic acid, malic 15      acid, tartaric acid, phthalic acid, succinic acid, methanesulfonic acid, toluenesulfonic acid, naphthalenesulfonic acid, camphorsulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid are useful. It is known that compounds possessing a basic nitrogen can be complexed with many different acids (both protic and non-protic) and usually it is preferred to administer a compound of this invention in the form of an acid addition salt. Additionally, this 20      invention includes quaternary ammonium salts of the compounds herein. These can be prepared by reacting the nucleophilic amines of the side chain with a suitably reactive alkylating agent such as an alkyl halide or benzyl halide.

25      The compounds utilized in this invention are prepared by a process which comprises one of the following:

a)      reacting a compound of formula



30

wherein n, R1-R6 and X are as defined above and hal is chlorine or bromine with a compound of formula:

- 9 -

5

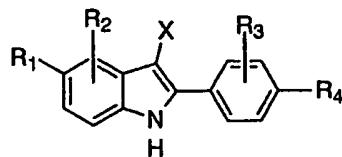
 $\text{HNR}_7\text{R}_8$ 

where  $\text{R}_7$  and  $\text{R}_8$  are as defined above to give a corresponding compound of formula I or II;

or

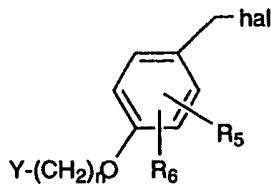
b) reacting a compound of formula

10



wherein  $\text{R}_1$ - $\text{R}_4$  and  $\text{X}$  are as defined above in the presence of a base, e.g.  $\text{NaH}$ , with a compound of formula

15



20

wherein  $\text{n}$ ,  $\text{R}_5$ ,  $\text{R}_6$  and  $\text{Y}$  are as defined above and hal is a halogen, e.g.  $\text{Cl}$  or  $\text{Br}$  to give a corresponding compound of Formula I;

if necessary protecting any reactive substituent groups during each process above and removing same; and

if desired converting a phenolic group present to a phosphate, sulfate, sulfamate or sulfate ester; and further if desired converting the compound of formula I or II to a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

25

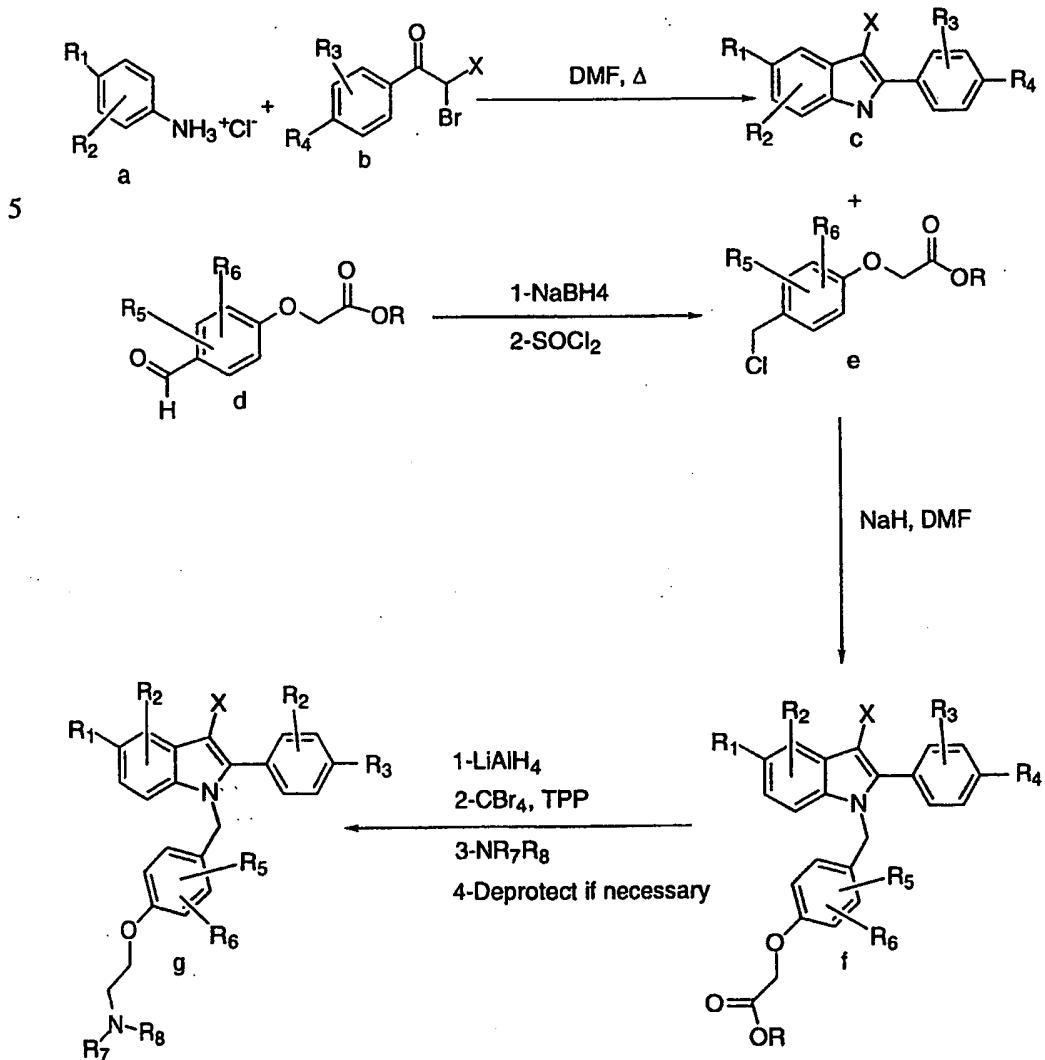
### Methods

Compounds of this invention can be synthesized in a general sense according to Scheme 1, below.

30

- 10 -

Scheme 1



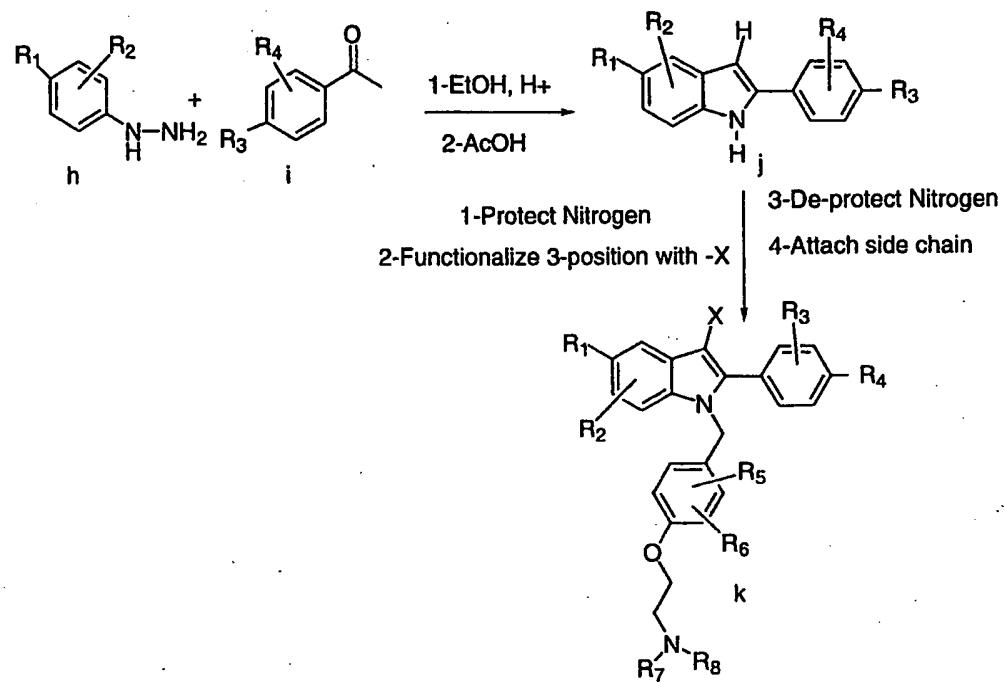
The initial indole synthesis is accomplished by heating an appropriately substituted alpha-bromo ketone (b) with the desired aniline (a) in DMF to form the indole (c). The product is then alkylated with a benzyl chloride (e) to give the substituted indole (f). The benzyl chloride (e) can be readily prepared from the aldehyde (d) in 2 steps as given. Product (g) can be prepared from (f) by reduction of the ester, conversion of the alcohol to a bromide, displacement of the bromide with the

5 desired amine in a suitable solvent such as THF or DMF, and finally, deprotection if necessary. Deprotection is necessary when either R<sub>1</sub> or R<sub>2</sub> or both is a protected phenol. The preferred protecting group is a benzyl group which can be conveniently removed by several conventional methods, especially hydrogenolysis.

For the synthesis of compounds with X=H, halogen, trifluoromethyl, cyano, 10 nitro, an alternative synthesis shown in scheme 2 may be preferable. The formation of halogens at the 3-position can be easily performed with such reagents as N-chlorosuccinamide, N-bromosuccinamide, or N-iodosuccinamide. A 3-Iodoindole compound obtained can be used as a precursor to the 3-trifluoromethyl compound by a coupling reaction utilizing a palladium catalyst and bistrifluoromethyl mercury (II). A 15 compound with a cyano group in the 3-position can be prepared by electrophilic cyanation or alternatively the 3-position can be formylated (with a formyl iminium salt, for example) then the formyl group converted to an oxime and subsequently dehydrated to a nitrile. Alternatively, the 3-cyano compound can be synthesized by reaction of the 3-unsubstituted indole with chlorosulfonylisocyanate followed by triethylamine. A 20 compound with the nitro group in the 3-position can be prepared by treating the indole with sodium nitrite and acetic acid. One skilled in the art recognizes these routes are not limiting and other routes are also available.

- 12 -

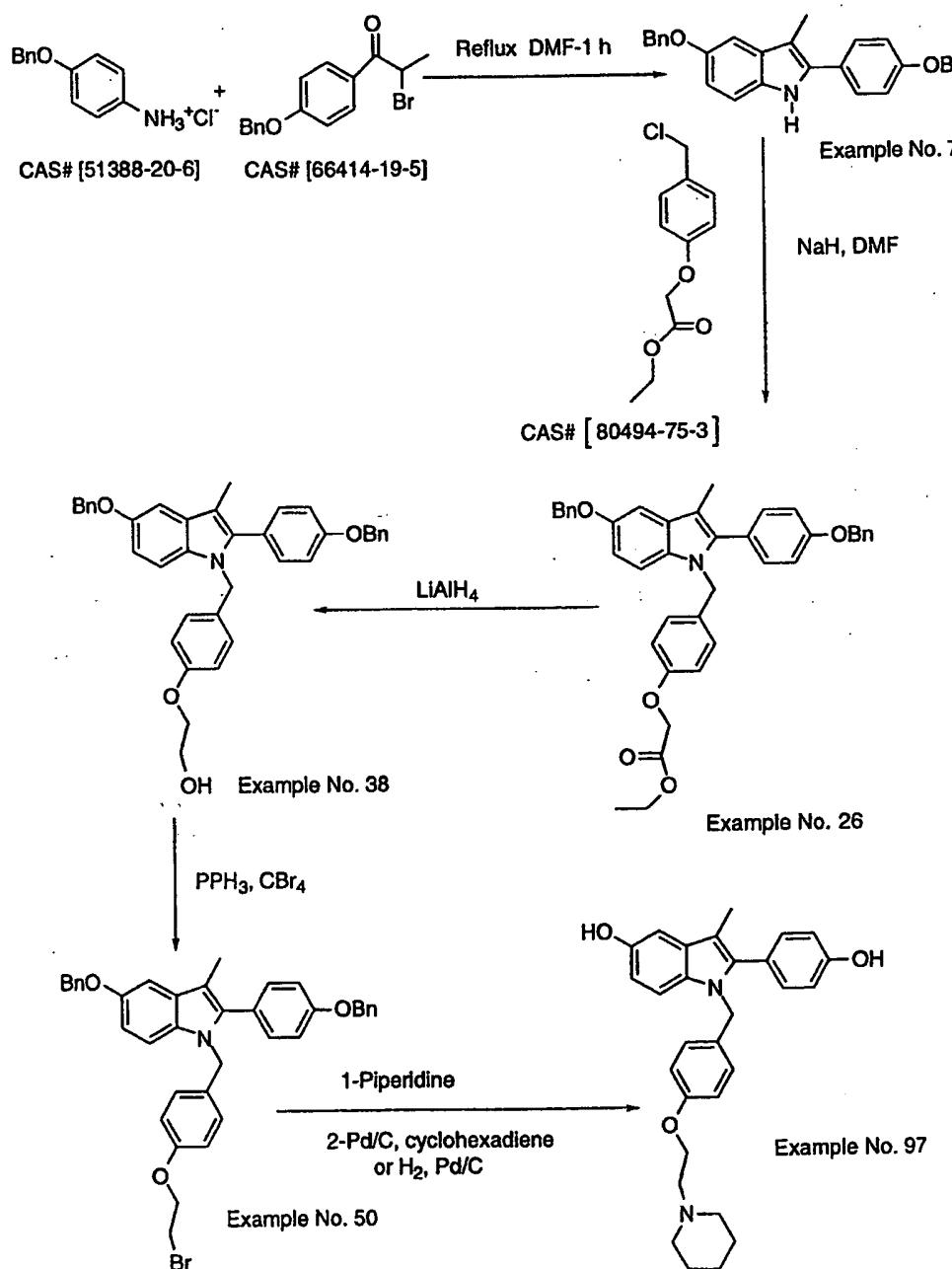
## 5 Scheme 2



Synthesis of selected representative examples are given in the following  
10 schemes:

- 13 -

## 5 Scheme 3

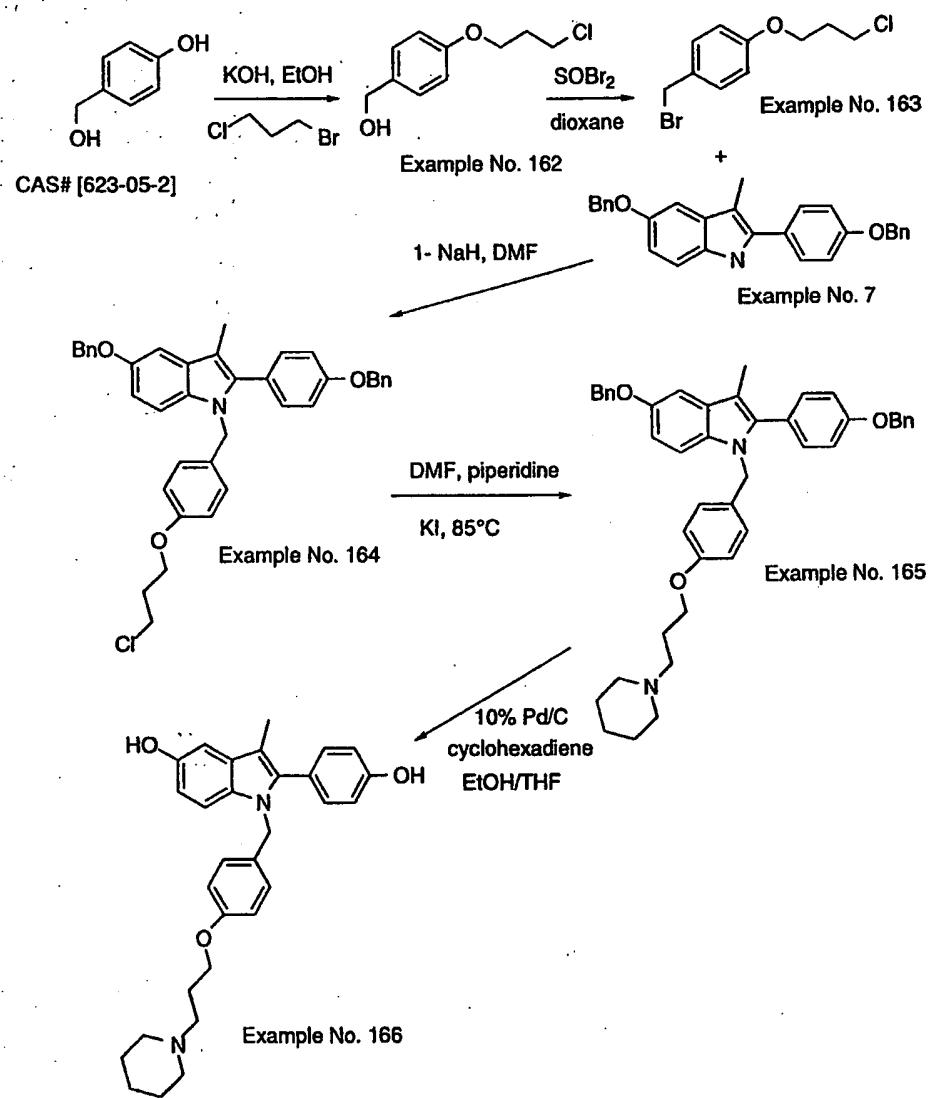


The synthesis of analogues with a 3-carbon chain (example No. 166) between the oxygen and the basic amine can be accomplished as shown in scheme 4.

- 14 -

5

Scheme 4

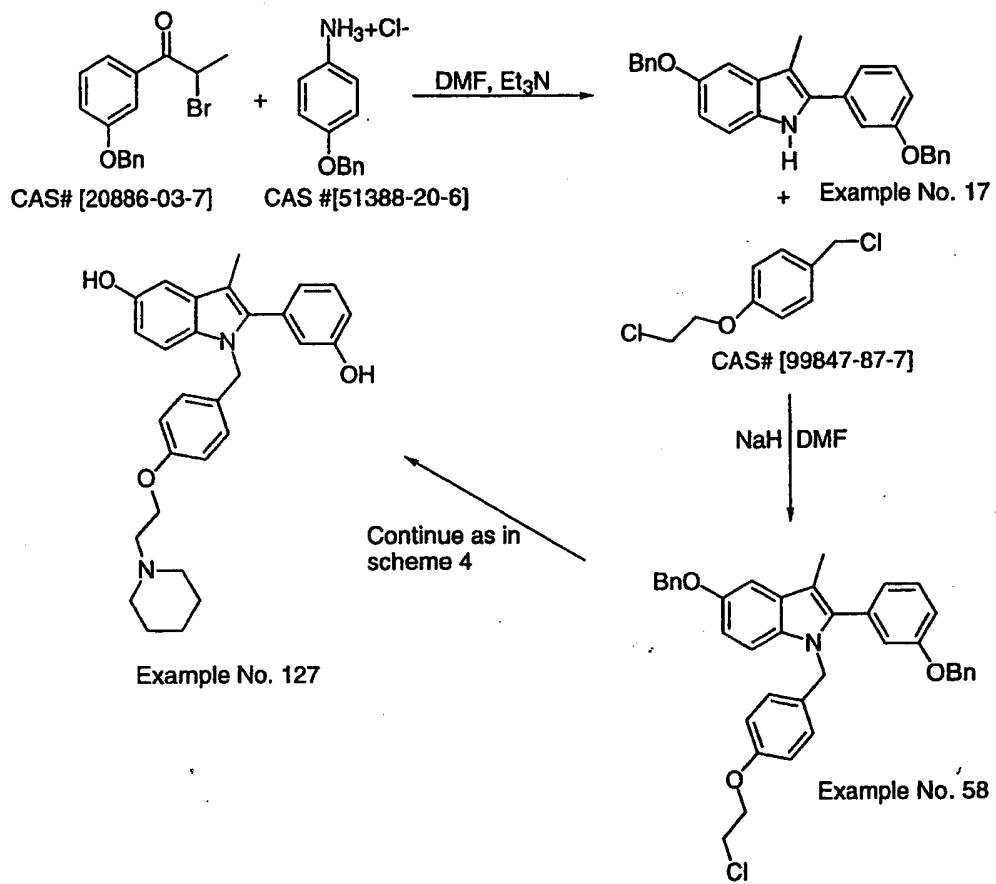


10

The synthetic procedure shown in scheme 4 may be used for compounds with two carbon chains analogous to example No. 97 in scheme 3. This is shown in scheme 4a for the synthesis of example No. 127.

- 15 -

## 5 Scheme 4a

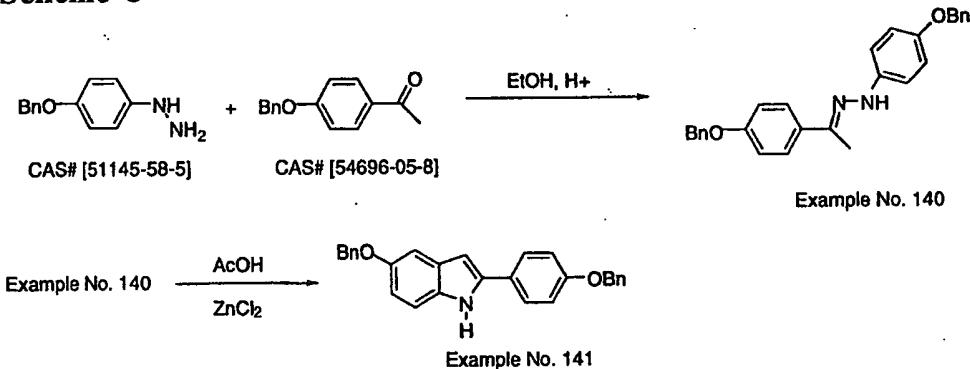


10

The synthesis of indoles with alternative substituents (CN, Cl) at the 3-position of the indole both utilize the 3-unsubstituted indole No. 141 for a precursor. The indole is synthesized by the Fisher method utilizing the hydrazone derived from the condensation of 4-benzyloxyacetophenone CAS No. [54696-05-8] and 4-benzyloxyphenylhydrazine CAS No. [51145-58-5]. The hydrazone No. 140 is then cyclized in acetic acid using zinc chloride to afford the desired indole No. 141. This synthesis can be seen in scheme 5.

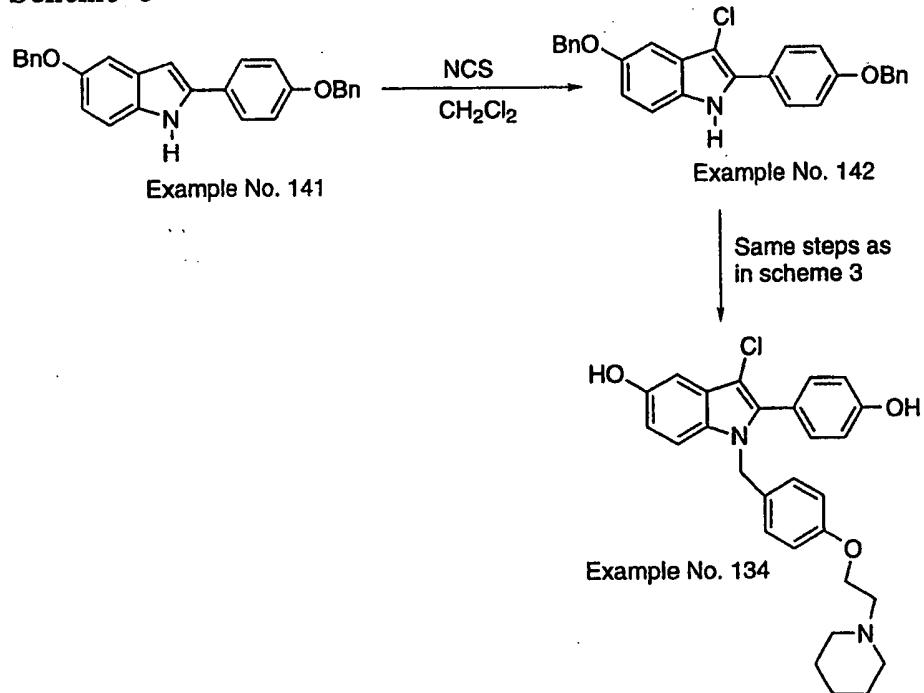
- 16 -

## 5 Scheme 5



The synthesis of 3-Chloroindole compounds is demonstrated for example No. 134 and shown, *infra*, in scheme 6. The indole No. 141 from scheme 5 is chlorinated with N-chlorosuccinamide. The 3-Chloroindole No. 142, thus obtained, is taken to the final product in analogous fashion to that shown in scheme 3.

## Scheme 6

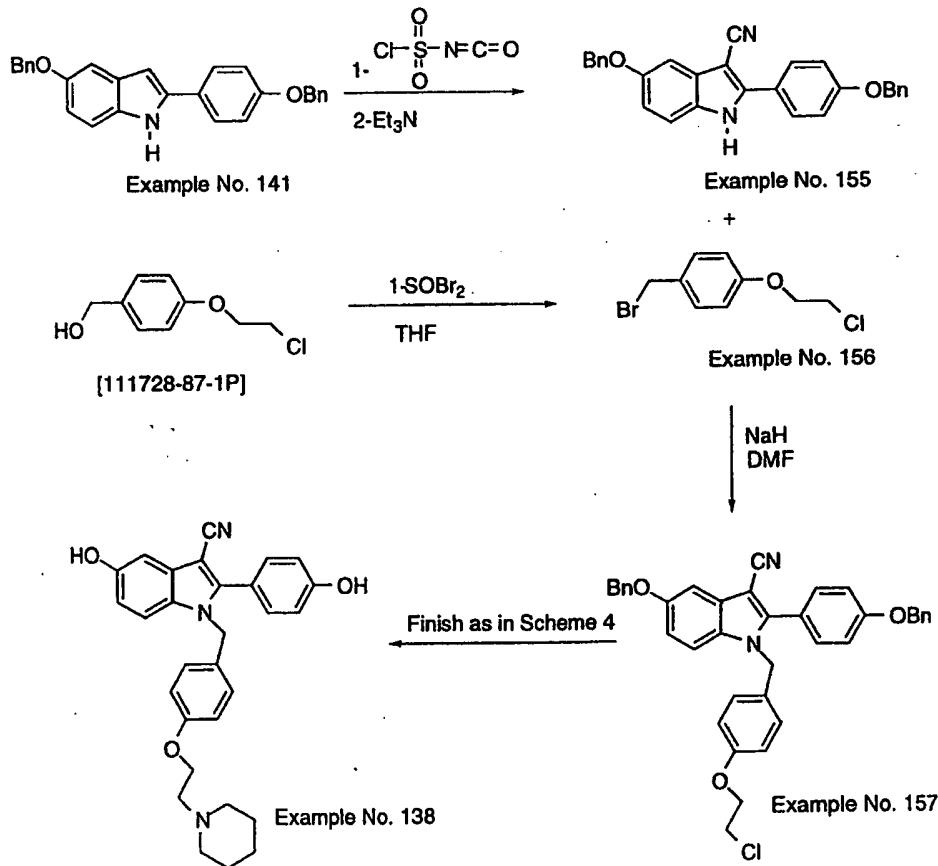


- 17 -

5        3-Cyano analogues are synthesized from the precursor indole No. 141 as shown in Scheme 7. Reaction of the precursor indole No. 141 with chlorosulfonyl isocyanate followed by addition of triethylamine yields the 3-Cyanoindole No. 155. The side chain is made by conversion of the benzylic alcohol of CAS No. [111728-87-1] to the benzylic bromide No. 156 using thionyl bromide in THF. The indole is 10 alkylated by the side chain in DMF using sodium hydride to give the intermediate No. 157. This can then be taken to the final product No. 138 in an analogous fashion to that shown in scheme 4.

**Scheme 7**

15



The compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) are partial estrogen agonists and display high affinity for the estrogen receptor. Unlike many estrogens, however, these

5 compounds do not cause increases in uterine wet weight. These compounds are antiestrogenic in the uterus and can completely antagonize the trophic effects of estrogen agonists in uterine tissue. These compounds are useful in treating or preventing mammal disease states or syndromes which are caused or associated with an estrogen deficiency. This tissue selectivity allows their use for desirable estrogenic 10 activity in certain tissues, such as bone, while limiting that activity in others, such as uterine tissue.

Estrogens useful in the formulations of this invention include estrone, estriol, equilin, estradiene, equilenin, ethinyl estradiol, 17 $\beta$ -estradiol, 17 $\alpha$ -dihydroequilenin, 15 17 $\beta$ -dihydroequilenin (U.S. Patent 2,834,712), 17 $\alpha$ -dihydroequilin, 17 $\beta$ -dihydroequilin, menstranol and conjugated estrogenic hormones, such as those in Wyeth-Ayerst Laboratories' Premarin<sup>®</sup> products. Phytoestrogens, such as equol or enterolactone, may also be used in the present formulations and methods. A preferred embodiment of this invention comprises pharmaceutical compositions and methods of 20 treatment utilizing conjugated estrogenic hormones, such as those in Wyeth-Ayerst Laboratories' Premarin<sup>®</sup> products, with one or more compounds of Formulas (I) or (III) listed herein. Esterified estrogens, such as those sold by Solvay Pharmaceuticals, Inc. under the Estratab<sup>®</sup> tradename, may also be used with the present formulations. Also preferred for use with the present invention are the salts of the applicable 25 estrogens, most preferably the sodium salts. Examples of these preferred salts are Sodium estrone sulfate, Sodium equilin sulfate, Sodium 17alpha-dihydroequilin sulfate, Sodium 17alpha-estradiol sulfate, Sodium Delta8,9- dehydroestrone sulfate, Sodium equilenin sulfate, Sodium 17beta-dihydroequilin sulfate, Sodium 17alpha-dihydroequilenin sulfate, Sodium 17beta-estradiol sulfate, Sodium 17beta-dihydroequilenin sulfate, Estrone 3-sodium sulfate, Equilin 3-sodium sulfate, 17alpha-Dihydroequilin 3-sodium sulfate, 3beta-Hydroxy-estra-5(10),7-dien-17-one 3-sodium sulfate, 5alpha-Pregnan-3beta-20R-diol 20-sodium sulfate, 5alpha-Pregnan-3beta,16alpha-diol-20-one 3-sodium sulfate, delta(8,9)-Dehydroestrone 3-sodium sulfate, Estra-3beta, 17alpha-diol 3-sodium sulfate, 3beta-Hydroxy-estr-5(10)-en-17-one 3-sodium sulfate or 5alpha-Pregnan-3beta,16alpha,20R-triol 3-sodium sulfate. 30 Preferred salts of estrone include, but are not limited to, the sodium and piperate salts. 35

5        The present compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) are tissue selective compounds having the ability to behave like estrogen agonists, such as by lowering cholesterol and preventing bone loss, or like estrogen antagonists. Therefore, these compounds in the present formulations are useful for treating many maladies including osteoporosis, prostatic hypertrophy, infertility, breast cancer, endometrial hyperplasia, endometrial  
10      cancer, endometriosis, cystic glandular hyperplasia, uterine hyperplasia, cervical hyperplasia, benign prostatic hyperplasia, cardiovascular disease, contraception, Alzheimer's disease and melanoma. The formulations of this invention may also be used to treat bone loss resulting from secondary osteoporosis, including that categorized as endocrine in nature, including that resulting from glucocorticoid excess,  
15      hyperparathyroidism, hyperthyroidism, hypogonadism, hyperprolactinemia, and diabetes mellitus. The bone loss may also be the drug-induced, such as that resulting from heparin treatments, alcohol consumption, or the use of tobacco, barbiturates or corticosteroids. The drug-induced loss of bone may also stem from treatment with gonadotropin releasing hormone (GnRH or LHRH) or synthetic GnRH antagonists or  
20      agonists, such as the leuprolide acetate injectable sold by TAP Pharmaceuticals Inc. under the tradename LUPRON® or the goserelin acetate implant sold by Zeneca Pharmaceuticals under the Zoladex® tradename. Such bone loss may also result from immobilization of the individual, chronic renal failure, malabsorption syndrome, hepatic disease, chronic obstructive lung disease, rheumatoid arthritis, or sarcoidosis.

25       Additionally, these formulations can be used for hormone replacement therapy in post-menopausal women or in other estrogen deficiency states where estrogen supplementation would be beneficial. The symbiotic activity of the compounds and estrogen(s) of the present methods of treatment are particularly of interest in  
30      overcoming the unwanted consequences of estrogen therapy, such as breakthrough bleeding and/or excessive endometrial stimulation, which may lead to endometrial hyperplasia or endometriosis. These formulations, therefore, may be used in methods of treating or preventing excessive estrogenic uterine stimulation in a mammal.

35       The formulations of this invention may also be used in methods of treatment for bone loss, which may result from an imbalance in an individual's formation of new bone tissues and the resorption of older tissues, leading to a net loss of bone. Such bone depletion results in a range of individuals, particularly in post-menopausal

- 20 -

5 women, women who have undergone hysterectomy/oophorectomy, those receiving or who have received extended corticosteroid therapies, those experiencing gonadal dysgenesis, and those suffering from Cushing's syndrome. Special needs for bone replacement can also be addressed using these formulations in individuals with bone fractures, defective bone structures, and those receiving bone-related surgeries and/or  
10 the implantation of prosthesis. In addition to those problems described above, these formulations can be used in treatments for osteoarthritis, Paget's disease, osteomalacia, osteohalisteresis, endometrial cancer, multiple myeloma and other forms of cancer having deleterious effects on bone tissues. Methods of treating the maladies listed herein are understood to comprise administering to an individual in need of such  
15 treatment a pharmaceutically effective amount of one or more of the compounds of Formulas (I) and (II), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in conjunction with a therapeutically desirable amount of an estrogen. This invention also includes pharmaceutical compositions utilizing one or more of the present compounds, and/or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, along with one or more pharmaceutically  
20 acceptable carriers, excipients, etc.

Estrogens regulate a number of physiological processes. The primary target tissues for estrogens include the reproductive tract (ovary; uterus; vagina), mammary tissue, skeleton, cardiovascular system and the central nervous system (CNS). The  
25 reduction in circulating estrogens results in a number of changes. There is a cessation in reproductive function with an associated amenorrhea, uterine atrophy, and increase in vaginal dryness (lack of keratinization). Mammary tissue becomes relatively quiescent. There is an increase in the rate of loss of bone mass (2-7%) compared to the normal 0.5-1.0%/year that is seen in all individuals over the age of 35. A change in  
30 lipid profile occurs with increases in Low Density Lipoprotein (LDL) and decreases in High Density Lipoprotein (HDL) commonly measured and an associated increased risk of a cardiovascular event (heart attack, stroke). Changes in the central nervous system include an increase in vasomotor symptoms (hot flush) and potentially changes in cognition and memory.

35

Estrogen replacement therapy (ERT) normalizes some of these changes, particularly those associated with the cardiovascular system (reduced LDL, increased HDL, reduced risk of heart attack), the skeleton (maintenance of bone mass, reduced

5 fracture risk), and central nervous system (reduction in frequency and severity of the hot flush). While the reproductive tract responds, it is not all positive. On the positive side, vaginal dryness is alleviated. However, negative uterine responses include hypertrophy and hyperplasia, along with some menstrual-like bleeding. The breast is also affected and there are data correlating exogenous estrogen therapy with an  
10 increased risk of breast cancer.

Currently, women with intact uteri are generally not prescribed estrogens alone, but estrogens in combination with a progestin to reduce uterine stimulation. While the risks of endometrial cancer are reduced to non-hormone treated levels, the other side  
15 effects of progestins reduce compliance in women on hormone replacement.

The tissue selective estrogen (TSE) compounds of this invention provide positive skeletal and cardiovascular affects similar to estrogens, without the negative effects associated with the uterus and breast. The combinations of TSEs and estrogens  
20 derive the positive effects of estrogens on the CNS, bone and cardiovascular, with the combination providing complimentary or additive effects on the bone and cardiovascular systems. The major variable is the TSEs ability to block estrogenic influence on the uterus and breast, which are the two major negative effects of unopposed estrogens.

25 It is understood that the dosage, regimen and mode of administration of these compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) will vary according to the malady and the individual being treated and will be subjected to the judgment of the medical practitioner involved. It is preferred that the administration of one or more of the compounds  
30 herein begins at a low dose and be increased until the desired effects are achieved. Similarly, it will be understood that the dosage(s) of the estrogen(s) utilized in the present formulations will be selected according to conventional methods. It is most preferred that the dosage will be monitored to achieve the desired result with the minimum of estrogen(s) necessary.

35

Effective administration of these compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) may be given at a dose of from about 0.01 mg/day to about 1,000 mg/day. Preferably, administration will be from about 1 mg/day to about 600 mg/day in a single dose or in

5 two or more divided doses. Most preferably a daily dose of between about 1 mg/day and about 150 mg/day will be administered. Such doses may be administered in any manner useful in directing the active compounds herein to the recipient, including orally, parenterally (including intravenous, intraperitoneal and subcutaneous injections, implants, etc.), intravaginally and transdermally. For the purposes of this disclosure,  
10 transdermal administrations are understood to include all administrations across the surface of the body and the inner linings of bodily passages including epithelial and mucosal tissues. Such administrations may be carried out using the present compounds, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, in lotions, creams, foams, patches, suspensions, solutions, and suppositories (rectal and vaginal).

15

Oral formulations containing the active compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) may comprise any conventionally used oral forms, including tablets, capsules, buccal forms, troches, lozenges and oral liquids, suspensions or solutions. Capsules may  
20 contain mixtures of the active compound(s) with inert fillers and/or diluents such as the pharmaceutically acceptable starches (e.g. corn, potato or tapioca starch), sugars, artificial sweetening agents, powdered celluloses, such as crystalline and microcrystalline celluloses, flours, gelatins, gums, etc. Useful tablet formulations may be made by conventional compression, wet granulation or dry granulation methods and  
25 utilize pharmaceutically acceptable diluents, binding agents, lubricants, disintegrants, suspending or stabilizing agents, including, but not limited to, magnesium stearate, stearic acid, talc, sodium lauryl sulfate, microcrystalline cellulose, carboxymethylcellulose calcium, polyvinylpyrrolidone, gelatin, alginic acid, acacia gum, xanthan gum, sodium citrate, complex silicates, calcium carbonate, glycine,  
30 dextrin, sucrose, sorbitol, dicalcium phosphate, calcium sulfate, lactose, kaolin, mannitol, sodium chloride, talc, dry starches and powdered sugar. Oral formulations herein may utilize standard delay or time release formulations to alter the absorption of the active compound(s). Suppository formulations may be made from traditional materials, including cocoa butter, with or without the addition of waxes to alter the  
35 suppository's melting point, and glycerin. Water soluble suppository bases, such as polyethylene glycols of various molecular weights, may also be used.

5        It will be understood that the estrogen of this invention will be administered in the dosages of conventional regimens, according to the recipient's tolerance and the particular treatment or maintenance schedule intended. The compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) herein will be administered in an amount necessary to agonize or antagonize the estrogen(s) of the formulation's activity to the level desired. When conjugated  
10      estrogens, USP, are used, it is preferred that the daily dosage is from 0.1 mg to 5.0 mg, more preferably between about 0.3 mg and about 2.5 mg, most preferably between about 0.3 and about 1.25 mg/day. For mestranol or ethynodiol-17 $\beta$  a daily dosage may be from about 1  $\mu$ g to about 0.15 mg/day and a dosage of from about 1  $\mu$ g to about 0.3 mg/day may be used for ethynodiol-17 $\beta$ , preferably between about 2  $\mu$ g to  
15      about .15 mg/day of ethynodiol-17 $\beta$ .

20       The compounds of this invention can be formulated neat or with a pharmaceutical carrier for administration, the proportion of which is determined by the solubility and chemical nature of the compound, chosen route of administration and standard pharmacological practice. The pharmaceutical carrier may be solid or liquid.

25       A solid carrier can include one or more substances which may also act as flavoring agents, lubricants, solubilizers, suspending agents, fillers, glidants, compression aids, binders or tablet-disintegrating agents; it can also be an encapsulating material. In powders, the carrier is a finely divided solid which is in admixture with the finely divided active ingredient. In tablets, the active ingredient is mixed with a carrier having the necessary compression properties in suitable proportions and compacted in the shape and size desired. The powders and tablets preferably contain up to 99% of the active ingredient. Suitable solid carriers include, for example, calcium phosphate,  
30      magnesium stearate, talc, sugars, lactose, dextrin, starch, gelatin, cellulose, methyl cellulose, sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, polyvinylpyrrolidone, low melting waxes and ion exchange resins.

35       Liquid carriers are used in preparing solutions, suspensions, emulsions, syrups, elixirs and pressurized compositions. The active ingredient can be dissolved or suspended in a pharmaceutically acceptable liquid carrier such as water, an organic solvent, a mixture of both or pharmaceutically acceptable oils or fats. The liquid carrier can contain other suitable pharmaceutical additives such as solubilizers, emulsifiers,

5 buffers, preservatives, sweeteners, flavoring agents, suspending agents, thickening agents, colors, viscosity regulators, stabilizers or osmo-regulators. Suitable examples of liquid carriers for oral and parenteral administration include water (partially containing additives as above, e.g. cellulose derivatives, preferably sodium carboxymethyl cellulose solution), alcohols (including monohydric alcohols and 10 polyhydric alcohols, e.g. glycols) and their derivatives, lethicins, and oils (e.g. fractionated coconut oil and arachis oil). For parenteral administration, the carrier can also be an oily ester such as ethyl oleate and isopropyl myristate. Sterile liquid carriers are useful in sterile liquid form compositions for parenteral administration. The liquid carrier for pressurized compositions can be halogenated hydrocarbon or other 15 pharmaceutically acceptable propellant.

20 Liquid pharmaceutical compositions which are sterile solutions or suspensions can be utilized by, for example, intramuscular, intraperitoneal or subcutaneous injection. Sterile solutions can also be administered intravenously. The compounds of this invention can also be administered orally either in liquid or solid composition form.

25 The compounds of this invention may be administered rectally or vaginally in the form of a conventional suppository, creams, gels, etc. For administration by intranasal or intrabronchial inhalation or insufflation, the compounds of this invention may be formulated into an aqueous or partially aqueous solution, which can then be utilized in the form of an aerosol. The compounds of this invention may also be 30 administered transdermally through the use of a transdermal patch containing the active compound and a carrier that is inert to the active compound, is non toxic to the skin, and allows delivery of the agent for systemic absorption into the blood stream via the skin. The carrier may take any number of forms such as creams and ointments, pastes, gels, and occlusive devices. The creams and ointments may be viscous liquid or semisolid emulsions of either the oil-in-water or water-in-oil type. Pastes comprised of absorptive powders dispersed in petroleum or hydrophilic petroleum containing the active ingredient may also be suitable. A variety of occlusive devices may be used to 35 release the active ingredient into the blood stream such as a semipermeable membrane covering a reservoir containing the active ingredient with or without a carrier, or a matrix containing the active ingredient. Other occlusive devices are known in the literature.

5

The dosage requirements vary with the particular compositions employed, the route of administration, the severity of the symptoms presented and the particular subject being treated. Treatment will generally be initiated with small dosages less than the optimum dose of the compound. Thereafter the dosage is increased until the 10 optimum effect under the circumstances is reached; precise dosages for oral, parenteral, transdermal, rectal or vaginal suppositories, nasal, or intrabronchial and other administrations will be determined by the administering physician based on experience with the individual subject treated. Preferably, the pharmaceutical composition is in unit dosage form, e.g. as tablets or capsules. In such form, the composition is subdivided in unit dose containing appropriate quantities of the active ingredient; the unit dosage forms can be packaged compositions, for example, packeted powders, vials, ampoules, prefilled syringes or sachets containing liquids. The unit dosage form can be, for example, a capsule or tablet itself, or it can be the appropriate number of any 15 such compositions in package form.

20

The compound(s) of Formulas (I) and (II) and the estrogen(s) of the present formulations may be administered in separate dosage units, such as separate pills, tablets, powders, etc., or combined into one formulation. When optimum dosages for the compounds of Formulas (I) and (II) and the estrogens of these formulations have 25 been determined, it may preferable to incorporate both into a single formulation for ease of administration. It is also understood that the formulations herein may or may not include other pharmaceutically active components.

Solvents used for the reactions described herein were anhydrous Aldrich Sure 30 Seal<sup>TM</sup> without further purification. Reagents were typically Aldrich and used without further purification. All reactions were carried out under a nitrogen atmosphere. Chromatography was performed using 230-400 mesh silica gel (Merck Grade 60, Aldrich Chemical Company). Thin layer chromatography was performed with Silica Gel 60 F254 plates from EM Science. <sup>1</sup>H NMR spectra were obtained on a Bruker AM-35 400 instrument in DMSO and chemical shifts reported in ppm. Melting points were determined on a Thomas-Hoover apparatus and are uncorrected. IR spectra were recorded on a Perkin-Elmer diffraction grating or Perkin-Elmer 784 spectrophotometers. Mass spectra were recorded on a Kratos MS 50 or Finnigan 8230

- 26 -

5 mass spectrometers. Elemental analyses were obtained with a Perkin-Elmer 2400 elemental analyzer. Analysis values for compounds with CHN analysis reported were within 0.4% of theoretical values.

Synthesis of  $\alpha$ -bromo ketones

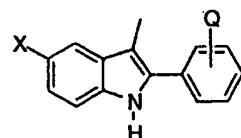
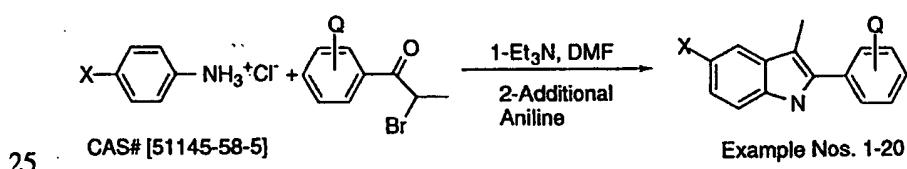
10

Method a

The synthesis of the alpha bromo ketones is conveniently accomplished by simply dissolving the starting phenyl ketone in ethyl ether (0.05-0.10 M) and at room temperature, 1.1 equivalents of bromine is added in dropwise. The reaction can be 15 monitored by TLC for consumption of starting materials. The reaction is worked up by washing with an aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution followed by a 10% aqueous sodium sulfite solution. The ether layer is washed with brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. Concentration of the reaction mixture typically yields the bromoketones in good yield and purity. The bromoketones were taken "as is" (without 20 purification or characterization) to the next step.

3-Methyl indoles

**Scheme 8**



- 27 -

5

Table 1

Example No.	X	Y
No. 1	H	H
No. 1a	F	OBn
No. 2	H	4'-Obn
No. 6	OBn	4'-OEt
No. 7	OBn	4'-OBn
No. 8	OBn	4'-F
No. 9	OBn	3'-OMe,4'-OBn
No. 10	OBn	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-
No. 11	OBn	4'-O-iPr
No. 12	OBn	4'-O-Cp
No. 13	OBn	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>
No. 14	OBn	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>
No. 15	OBn	4'-Cl
No. 16	OBn	2'-OMe,4'-OMe
No. 17	OBn	3'-OBn
No. 18	OBn	4'-OBn,3'-F
No. 19	OBn	3'-OMe
No. 20	OBn	4'-OCF <sub>3</sub>

Method 1Illustrated For Example No. 7

10

5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole

A flask was charged with 4-benzylxyaniline hydrochloride CAS No. [51145-58-5]. (45 g, 0.23 mol), 4'-benzylxy-2-bromophenylpropiophenone CAS No. [66414-19-5] (21g, 0.066 mol), and 50 mL DMF. The reaction was heated at reflux 15 for 30 minutes and then cooled to rt and then partitioned between 250 mL EtOAc and 100 mL 1N HCl (aq). The EtOAc was washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (aq) and brine, then dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solution was concentrated and the residue taken up in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and hexanes added to precipitate out 25g of a crude solid. The solid was dissolved in

- 28 -

5  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and evaporated onto silica gel and chromatographed using  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{Hexane}$  (1:5) to yield 9.2 g of a tan solid (33%):  $\text{Mp} = 150\text{--}152^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.88 (s, 1 H), 7.56 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.48 (d, 4 H,  $J = 7.9$  Hz), 7.42-7.29 (m, 6 H), 7.21 (d, 1 H,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 7.13 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.08 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 6.94 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$ , 2.4 Hz), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 2.33 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3470, 10 2880, 2820, 1620  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 419.

Method 2 (shown in scheme 8)

15

Also Illustrated For Example No. 7

Reagents used were same as in method 1 except the additional use of triethylamine in this method. The bromoketone CAS No. [66414-19-5] (50.0 g, 0.16 mol) in 200 mL DMF was treated with the aniline hydrochloride CAS No. [51145-58-5] (44 g, 0.22 mol) and the reaction purged with nitrogen for about 10 minutes. The triethylamine (54.6 mL) was added and the reaction was heated at 120°C for 2 hours. TLC analysis (EtOAc/hexanes) shows the starting material has dissappeared forming a more polar spot. The reaction mixture is allowed to cool down and an additional 48 g of the aniline hydrochloride was added. The reaction was heated to 150°C for 2 hours. 20 An additional 5 grams of the aniline hydrochloride was added and the reaction was heated at 150°C for an additional 30 minutes. The reaction mixture is allowed to cool to room temperature and then poured into approximately 1.5 liters of water and extracted with 2 liters of ethyl acetate. Solids are dissolved with additional ethyl acetate as neccessary. The ethyl acetate layer is washed with 1 liter of 1 N NaOH solution aq., 1 25 liter of water, brine, then dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The organic layers were concentrated down to yield a crude solid which is stirred with 500 mL of methanol and filtered. This solid is then stirred with 500 mL of ethyl ether and filtered. The solid is stirred alternatively with methanol and ether until it is of whitish color and has a melting point similar to that described for No. 7 in method 1. Reaction yields 30 36 grams of product.

5

Physical Data for Indoles

The following 3-methyl indoles ( No. 1- No. 20) were synthesized according to the procedure outlined in scheme 2 using method 2 using the appropriately substituted bromoketones (prepared as given above) and anilines (commercially available; Aldrich) 10 as starting materials.

**Example No. 1 2-Phenyl-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 90 - 94°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.13 (s, 1 H), 7.68 - 7.64 (m, 2 H), 7.54 - 7.46 (m, 3 H), 7.37 - 7.32 (m, 2 H), 7.12 - 7.06 (m, 1 H), 7.03 - 6.97 (m, 1 H), 2.40 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 207 (M+).

**Example No. 1a 5-Fluoro-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 143 - 146°C.

**20 Example No. 2 2-(4-Benzylxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 118 - 120°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.03 (s, 1 H), 7.57 (dd, 2 H, J = 2.0 Hz, 6.6 Hz), 7.48 - 7.46 (m, 3 H), 7.44 - 7.28 (m, 4 H), 7.18 - 7.11 (m, 2 H), 7.08 - 7.03 (m, 1 H), 7.0 - 6.95 (m, 1 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 2.36 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 313 (M+).

25

**Example No. 3 5-Benzylxy-2-phenyl-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 141-144°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR(DMSO) 10.98 (s, 1 H), 7.65-7.61 (m, 2 H), 7.51-7.44 (m, 4 H), 7.42-7.28 (m, 4 H), 7.23 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8Hz), 7.10 (d, 1 H, J = 2.5Hz), 6.80 (d, 1 H , J = 6.0Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 2.36 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 313 (M+).

30

**Example No. 4 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp =158°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR 10.85 (brs, 1 H), 7.56 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.48 (d, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.45 - 7.36 (m, 2 H), 7.34 -7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.09 - 7.04 (m, 3 H), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.80 (s, 3 H), 2.33 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 343 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>2</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

- 30 -

5   **Example No. 5 5-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 139 - 142°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.85 (s , 1 H), 7.57 (d , 2 H , J = 8.8 Hz),  
7.19 (d , 1 H , J = 8.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 6.95 (d , 1H , J = 2.2 Hz),  
6.71 (dd , 1H , J = 8.5 Hz , J = 2.4 Hz), 3.80 (s , 3 H), 3.76 (s , 3 H), 2.33 (s , 3 H);  
MS eI m/z 267 (M+); CHN calc for C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>17</sub>NO<sub>2</sub>.

10   **Example No. 6 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 143-145°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.86 (s , 1H), 7.54 (d , 2 H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.46  
(d, 2 H , J = 7.3 Hz), 7.41-7.37 (m , 2 H), 7.32-7.30 (m, 1 H), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6  
Hz), 7.05 (d , 1 H), 7.03 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.79 (dd , 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, J = 2.4  
Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.07 (q , 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 2.32 (s , 3 H), 1.34 (t , 3 H, J = 7.0  
Hz); MS eI m/z 357 (M+).

15   **Example No. 8 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 132°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.0 (s, 1 H), 7.68-7.64 (m, 2 H), 7.49-7.47  
(m, 2 H), 7.41-7.31 (m, 5 H), 7.23 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.10 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz),  
6.82 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 2.34 (s, 3 H); MS EI m/z 331; CHN  
calcd for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>18</sub>FNO.

20   **Example No. 9 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-3-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 155 -158°C ; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.88 (s , 1H), 7.50 - 7.45 (m , 4 H), 7.41 -  
7.35 (m ,6H), 7.22 - 7.20 (m , 2 H), 7.14 (s , 2 H) , 7.08 (d , 1H , J = 2.2Hz), 6.78  
(dd, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz, J = 2.4Hz), 5.13 (s , 2H) , 5.11(s , 2H), 3.85 (s, 3H), 2.35  
(s , 3H); MS eI m/z 449 (M+).

25   **Example No. 10 2-Benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl-5-benzylxy-3-methyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 142-145°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.86 (s , 1H), 7.48 (d , 2 H , J = 7.0 Hz), 7.40  
- 7.30 (m , 3 H), 7.20 (m , 2 H), 7.10 - 7.05 (m, 3 H ), 6.78 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J  
= 2.4 Hz ), 6.06 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 2.31 (s , 3 H); MS eI m/z 357 (M+); CHN  
calc for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>19</sub>NO<sub>3</sub>.

- 31 -

5    Example No. 11    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole

Mp = 136 - 138°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.86 (s, 1 H), 7.55 - 7.51 (m, 2 H), 7.50 - 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.40 - 7.34 (m, 2 H), 7.39 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.06 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.02 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.77 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz); 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.68 - 4.62 (m, 1 H), 2.32 (s, 3 H), 1.28 (d, 6 H, J = 6.0 Hz); MS eI m/z 371 (M+).

Example No. 12    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-cyclopenyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole

15    Mp = 161 - 167°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.85 (s, 1 H), 7.53 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.36 (m, 2 H), 7.33 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.07 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.01 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.78 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.88 - 4.84 (m, 1 H), 2.32 (s, 3 H), 1.99 - 1.88 (m, 2 H), 1.78 - 1.69 (m, 4 H), 1.64 - 1.52 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2920, 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 397 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{27}\text{NO}_2 + 0.25 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

Example No. 13    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 11.0 (br s, 1 H), 7.87 - 7.82 (m, 4 H), 7.48 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.44 - 7.35 (m, 2 H), 7.34 - 7.26 (m, 2 H), 7.15 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.87 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 2.41 (s, 3 H); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{18}\text{F}_3\text{NO}$ .

30    Example No. 14    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-methyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole

Mp = 144 - 146°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.91 (s, 1 H), 7.56 - 7.20 (m, 10 H), 7.08 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 2.34 (s, 3 H), 2.34 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 327(M+).

35    Example No. 15    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-chloro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole

Mp = 134-136°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 11.04 (s, 1 H), 7.65 (d, 2 H, J = 8.3Hz), 7.53 (d, 2 H, J = 8.5Hz), 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.41 - 7.37 (m, 2H), 7.31 - 7.28 (m, 1H), 7.25 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4Hz), 6.82

- 32 -

5 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2H), 2.35 (s, 3H); IR (KBr) 3380, 1210  
 $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 347 (M+); CHN calc for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{18}\text{ClNO}_2$ .

Example No. 16 5-Benzylxy-2-(2,4-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole  
 10 Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.58 (s, 1 H), 7.50 - 7.18 (m, 7 H), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.76 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.69 - 6.62 (m, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.82 (s, 3 H), 3.78 (s, 3 H), 2.12 (s, 3 H).

Example No. 17 5-Benzylxy-2-(3-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole  
 15 Mp = 83 - 86°C

Example No. 18 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-3-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole  
 20 Mp = 135 - 137°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.94 (s, 1 H), 7.50 - 7.31 (m, 13 H), 7.22 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.10 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.81 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.23 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 2.34 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/Z 437 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{24}\text{FNO}_2$ .

25 Example No. 19 5-Benzylxy-2-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole  
 Mp = 107 - 109°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 11.00 (s, 1 H), 7.51 - 7.48 (m, 2 H), 7.43 - 7.20 (m, 7 H), 7.13 - 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.1 Hz), 6.93 - 6.90 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz, J = 5.7 Hz), 6.86 - 6.82 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz),  
 30 5.12 (s, 2 H), 3.83 (s, 3 H), 2.38 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900, 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 343 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{21}\text{NO}_2$ .

Example No. 20 5-Benzylxy-3-methyl-2-(4-trifluoromethoxy-phenyl)-1H-indole  
 35 Mp = 127 - 128°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 11.07 (s, 1 H), 7.77 - 7.74 (dd, 2 H, J = 1.8 Hz, J = 5.0 Hz), 7.50 - 7.48 (d, 4 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.42 - 7.25 (m, 4 H), 7.14 - 7.13 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.87 - 6.83

- 33 -

5 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.3 Hz,  $J$  = 6.3 Hz), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 2.37 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3360, 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 396 (M $+$ ); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{18}\text{F}_3\text{NO}_2$ .

**3-Methylindole acetic acid ethyl esters**

10 **Scheme 9**

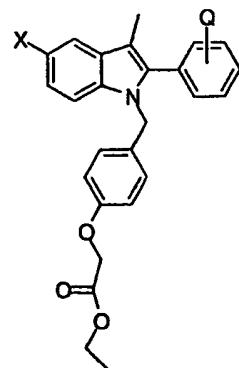
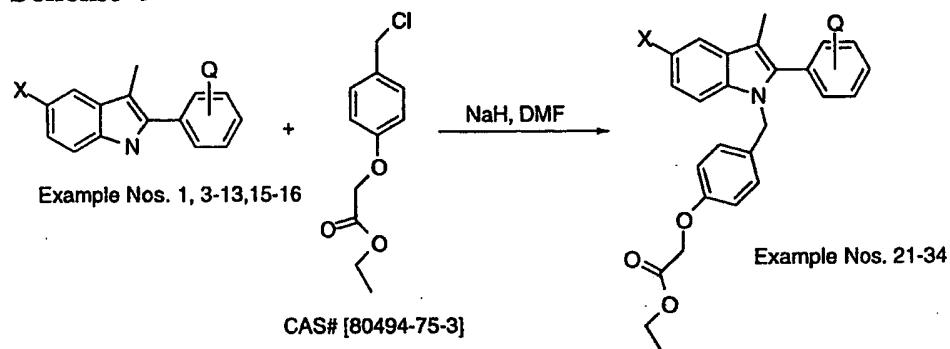


Table 2

Example No.	X	Q
No. 21	H	H
No. 22	OBn	H
No. 23	OBn	4'-OMe
No. 24	OMe	4'-OMe
No. 25	OBn	4'-OEt
No. 26	OBn	4'-OBn
No. 27	OBn	4'-F
No. 28	OBn	3'-OMe,4'-OBn
No. 29	OBn	4'-O-iPr
No. 30	OBn	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-
No. 31	OBn	4'-OCp
No. 32	OBn	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>
No. 33	OBn	4'-Cl
No. 34	OBn	2'-OMe, 4'-OMe

Experimental Procedure For 3-Methylindole Acetic Acid Ethyl EstersSynthesis Method 3

10

Illustrated For Example No. 26{4-[5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxo}-acetic acid ethyl ester

15        A solution of 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-indole (indole example No. 7) (32g, 77 mmol) in DMF (0.15 L) was cooled to 0°C and treated with sodium hydride (2.2 g, 89 mmol). The reaction was stirred for 20 minutes and then the benzyl chloride CAS No. [80494-75-3] (29g, 127 mmol) was added and the reaction stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. The ethyl acetate was concentrated and triturated with ether to obtain 21 g of a white solid. The filtrate was concentrated and triturated with ether to

20

- 35 -

5 give an additional 7 g of white solid for a total yield of 28 g: Mp = 129-131°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 4 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.39 (q, 4 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.36-7.32 (m, 1 H), 7.29 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.13-7.09 (m, 4 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.66 (s, 2 H), 4.11 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.2 Hz); MS eI m/z 612.

Physical Data For Indole Ethyl Esters

15 The following indole alkylation products were prepared according to scheme 9 using method 3 with the appropriately substituted 3-methyl indole selected from ( No. 1- No. 16) as the starting material.

**Example No. 21 {4-[2-Phenyl-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

20 Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.57 - 7.30 (m, 7 H), 7.13 - 7.02 (m, 2 H), 6.77 - 6.70 (m, 4 H), 5.22 (s, 2 H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.09 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.20 (s, 3 H), 1.15 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); MS eI m/z 399 (M+).

**Example No. 22 {4-[5-Benzyl-2-phenyl-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

25 Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR(DMSO) 7.50 - 7.40 (m, 10 H), 7.22 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4Hz), 7.14 (d, 1H, J = 2.5Hz), 6.83 (d, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.10 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.14 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0Hz); MS eI m/z 505 (M+).

30 **Example No. 23 {4-[5-Benzyl-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Mp = 90 - 96°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.41 - 7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.33 - 7.27 (m, 3 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.03 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.11 (q, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); IR (KBr) 2990, 2900, 1760, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS FAB m/z 536 (M+H+).

5

**Example No. 24 {4-[5-Methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyll-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

10  $\text{Mp} = 109\text{-}113^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (DMSO) 7.27 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.03 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.99 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.5\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.78 - 6.70 (m, 5 H), 5.15 (s, 2H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.11 (q, 2 H,  $J = 7.0\text{ Hz}$ ), 3.78 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.15 (t, 3 H,  $J = 7.1\text{ Hz}$ ); MS eI m/z 459 (M+).

15 **Example No. 25 {4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyll-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

20  $\text{Mp} = 113\text{-}115^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H,  $J = 7.3\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.40 - 7.25 (m, 5 H), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.2\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.01 (d, 2 H,  $J = 6.8\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.78 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8\text{Hz}, J = 2.4\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.15 - 4.01 (m, 4 H), 2.14 (s, 3H), 1.33 (t, 3 H,  $J = 5.7\text{ Hz}$ ), 1.16 (t, 3 H,  $J = 7.1\text{ Hz}$ ); MS eI m/z 549 (M+).

**Example No. 27 {4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

25  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.15 (m, 16 H), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.62 (s, 2 H), 4.13 (q, 2 H,  $J = 7.1\text{ Hz}$ ), 2.18 (s, 3 H), 1.20 (t, 3 H,  $J = 7.1\text{ Hz}$ ).

**Example No. 28 {4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(3-methoxy-4-benzylxy)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

30  $\text{Foam}$ ;  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.30 (m, 10 H), 7.22 (d, 2H,  $J = 9.1\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.13 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.85 - 6.70 (m, 6 H), 5.17 (s, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.66 (s, 2 H), 4.14 (m, 2H), 3.61 (s, 3 H), 2.17 (s, 3 H), 1.16 (t, 3 H,  $J = 7.0\text{ Hz}$ ).

**Example No. 29 {4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(4-isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyll-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

35  $\text{Oil}$ ;  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2H,  $J = 7.7\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.42 - 7.28 (m, 3 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.7\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.7\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.4\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.99 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.79 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 2.4\text{ Hz}, 8.8\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.70 - 4.60 (m, 3 H), 4.10 (q, 2 H,  $J = 7.0\text{ Hz}$ ), 2.15

5 (s, 3 H), 1.27 (d, 6 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.1 Hz); MS eI m/z 563 (M+).

**Example No. 30 {4-[5-Benzyl-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.32 (m, 1 H),  
10 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.00 (d, 1 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 6.90  
(d, 1 H, 5.0 Hz), 6.82 - 6.75 (m, 6H), 6.07 (s, 2H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.10  
(s, 2H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.10 (m, 2 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.15 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz);  
MS eI m/z 549 (M+).

15 **Example No. 31 {4-[5-Benzyl-2-(4-cyclopentyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Mp = 96-98°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 1 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.40 - 7.36 (m, 2 H),  
7.33 - 7.30 (m, 1 H), 7.26 (m, 2 H), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11  
(d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz),  
20 6.74 (s, 5 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.86 - 4.80 (m, 1 H), 4.66 (s, 2 H), 4.13  
(q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.98 - 1.85 (m, 2 H), 1.79 - 1.65 (m, 4 H), 1.62  
- 1.55 (m, 2 H), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); IR (KBr) 2950, 2910, 2890, 1760, 1610  
cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 589 (M+); CHN calcd for C:77.39 H:6.67 N: 2.38 Found: C:76.76  
H:6.63 N:2.27.

25 **Example No. 32 {4-[5-Benzyl-3-methyl-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Mp = 221°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.60 (d, 2 H, J = 7.9 Hz),  
7.48 (d, 2 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.40 - 7.36 (m, 4 H), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.86  
30 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.65  
(s, 2 H), 4.11 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.20 (s, 3 H), 1.16 (t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); IR (KBr)  
2920, 1730 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 573 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>30</sub>F<sub>3</sub>NO<sub>4</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

35 **Example No. 33 {4-[5-Benzyl-2-(4-chlorophenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Mp = 99-101°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.52 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6Hz), 7.46  
(d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.42 - 7.38 (m, 4 H), 7.36 (m, 1H), 7.25

- 38 -

5 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.65 (s, 2 H), 4.11 (q, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.15 (t, 3 H, J = 7.2 Hz); MS ei m/z 539 (M+); CHN calc for C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>30</sub>ClNO<sub>4</sub>.

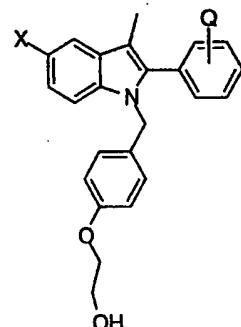
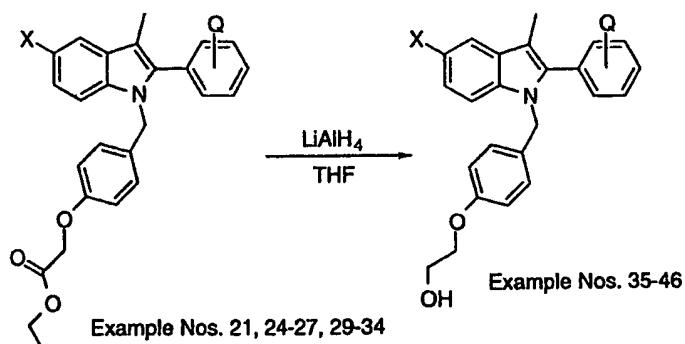
10 **Example No. 34 {4-[5-Benzyl-2-(2,4-dimethoxy)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.30 - 6.45 (m, 15 H), 4.95 (s, 2 H), 4.75 - 4.65 (m, 2 H), 4.50 (s, 2 H), 3.97 (q, 2 H, J = 7.1 Hz), 3.65 (s, 3 H), 3.51 (s, 3 H), 1.87 (3 H), 1.01 (t, 3 H, J = 7.1 Hz).

**3-Methylindole phenylethanols**

**Scheme 10**

20



5

Table 3

Example No.	X	Q
No. 35	H	H
No. 36	OMe	4'-OMe
No. 37	OBn	4'-OEt
No. 38	OBn	4'-OBn
No. 39	OBn	4'-F
No. 40	OBn	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-
No. 41	OBn	4'-O-iPr
No. 42	OBn	4'-OCp
No. 43	OBn	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>
No. 44	OBn	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>
No. 45	OBn	4'-Cl
No. 46	OBn	2'-OMe, 4'-OMe

Experimental Procedure For 3-Methylindole Phenethanols SynthesisMethod 4

10

Illustrated For Example No. 382-[4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxo]-ethanol

15        A solution of No. 26 from previous step (5.5 g, 8.8 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was cooled to 0°C and a solution of LiAlH<sub>4</sub> (10mL, 1 M) in THF was added dropwise. After 30 minutes at 0°C the reaction was carefully quenched with water, and partitioned between EtOAc and 1 N HCl. The EtOAc was dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, concentrated, and chromatographed on silica gel EtOAc/hexane (2:3) to yield 4.0 g of No. 38 as a white foam: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48-7.46 (m, 4 H), 7.42-7.27 (m, 8 H), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12-7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.80 (t, 1 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.86 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.63 (q, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H).

- 40 -

5

Physical Data For Indole Phenethanols

Following compounds were made according to scheme 10 and method 4 using the appropriately substituted indole ethyl ester selected from No. 21- No. 34.

10 **Example No. 35 2-[4-[2-phenyl-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol**

Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.57 - 7.32 (m, 7 H), 7.13 - 7.02 (m, 2 H), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 4.80 (s, 1 H), 3.86 - 3.83 (m, 2 H), 3.62 (s, 2 H), 2.20 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 357 (M+).

15 **Example No. 36 2-[4-[5-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol**

Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.27 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8\text{Hz}$ ), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.03 (d, 2 H  $J = 8.6\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.99 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.5\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.78 - 6.70 (m, 5 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 4.80 (brs, 1H), 3.85 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.0\text{ Hz}$ ), 3.78 (s, 3H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.63 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.0\text{ Hz}$ ), 2.16 (s, 3H); MS eI m/z 417 (M+).

20 **Example No. 37 2-[4-[5-benzyloxy-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol**

Foam;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H,  $J = 7.3\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.40 - 7.25 (m, 5 H), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.2\text{ Hz}$ ), 7.01 (d, 2 H,  $J = 6.8\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.78 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8\text{Hz}, J = 2.4\text{ Hz}$ ), 6.73 (s, 4H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 4.80 (brs, 1 H), 4.06 (q, 2 H,  $J = 6.8\text{ Hz}$ ), 3.85 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.0\text{ Hz}$ ), 3.63 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.8\text{ Hz}$ ), 2.14 (s, 3H), 1.33 (t, 3H,  $J = 6.9\text{ Hz}$ ); MS eI m/z 507 (M+).

30 **Example No. 39 2-[4-[5-benzyloxy-2-(4-flouro-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol**

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.40 - 6.60 (m, 16 H), 5.10 (s, 1 H), 5.07 (s, 2 H), 5.02 (s, 2 H), 3.76 (t, 2 H,  $J = 4.9\text{ Hz}$ ), 3.53 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.0\text{ Hz}$ ), 2.06 (s, 3 H).

- 41 -

5 Example No. 40 2-[4-[5-benzyloxy-2-(3,4-methylenedioxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol

Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 7.0 Hz), 7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.32 (m, 1 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.2 Hz), 7.00 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 7.9 Hz), 6.90 (d, 1 H, 5.0 Hz), 6.82 - 6.75 (m, 6H), 6.07 (s, 2 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.86 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.0 Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.0 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 507 (M+).

Example No. 41 2-[4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(4-isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol

15 Foam;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2H,  $J$  = 7.7 Hz), 7.42 - 7.28 (m, 3 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.7 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.7 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.80 (bs, 1 H), 4.70 - 4.60 (m, 1 H), 3.85 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 4.8 Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.1 Hz), 2.13 (s, 3 H), 1.30 (d, 6 H,  $J$  = 5.9 Hz); MS eI m/z 521 (M+).

Example No. 42 2-[4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(4-cyclopentyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol

Mp = 129-131°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz), 7.38 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz), 7.33 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.84 - 4.80 (m, 1 H), 4.79 (t, 1 H,  $J$  = 5.7 Hz), 3.86 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 4.8 Hz), 3.63 (q, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.1 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.96 - 1.87 (m, 2 H), 1.77 - 1.65 (m, 4 H), 1.62 - 1.53 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3490 br, 2920, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/Z 547 (M+).

Example No. 43 2-[4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(4-triflouromethyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol

Foam;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.83 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.1 Hz), 7.59 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 7.9 Hz), 7.47 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.3 Hz), 7.42 - 7.36 (m, 2 H), 7.35 - 7.29 (m, 2 H), 7.18 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz), 6.87 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.1 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.77 - 6.68 (m, 4 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.81 (br s, 1 H), 3.85 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.1 Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.1 Hz), 2.19 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 531.

5

**Example No. 44 2-[4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(4-methyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol**

Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2 H,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 7.45 - 7.18 (m, 8 H), 7.12 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.81 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.80 (bs, 1 H), 3.85 (t, 2 H,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 2.34 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 477 (M+).

**Example No. 45 2-[4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(4-chloro-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol**

15 Mp = 110 - 113°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.52 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 7.46 (d, 2 H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 7.38 (m, 4 H), 7.42 - 7.37 (m, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 1 H,  $J = 9.0$  Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz,  $J = 2.5$  Hz), 6.76 - 6.70 (m, 4 H), 5.17 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.85 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 2.16 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 497 (M+).

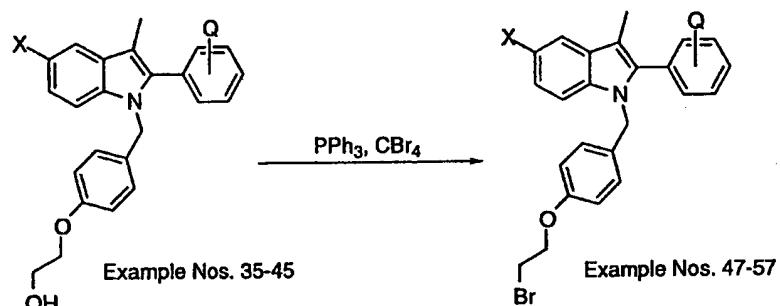
20

**Example No. 46 2-[4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(2,4-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol**

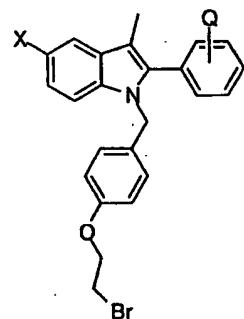
Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2 H,  $J = 7.5$  Hz), 7.39 - 7.35 (m, 2 H), 7.31 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.16 - 7.06 (m, 3 H), 6.82 - 6.72 (m, 5 H), 6.68 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 6.61 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz, 8.3 Hz), 5.0 (s, 1 H), 4.88 (s, 2 H), 4.85 (d, 1 H,  $J = 6.3$  Hz), 4.69 (d, 1 H,  $J = 6.3$  Hz), 3.63 (t, 2 H,  $J = 6.9$  Hz), 3.58 (s, 3 H), 3.46 (s, 3 H), 3.40 (t, 2 H,  $J = 6.9$  Hz), 1.80 (s, 3 H).

- 43 -

5

Data for 3-methylindole phenylethyl bromides**Scheme 11**

10



15

**Table 4**

Example No.	X	Q
No. 47	H	H
No. 48	OMe	4'-OMe
No. 49	OBn	4'-OEt
No. 50	OBn	4'-OBn

- 44 -

5

Table 4 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q
No. 51	OBn	4'-F
No. 52	OBn	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-
No. 52a	OBn	3'-OMe, 4'-OBn
No. 53	OBn	4'-O-iPr
No. 54	OBn	4'-OCp
No. 55	OBn	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>
No. 56	OBn	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>
No. 57	OBn	4'-Cl

Experimental Procedure For 3-Methylindole Phenethyl bromide

10

SynthesisMethod 5Illustrated For Example No. 50Example No. 5015 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole

To a solution of example No. 38 (3.3 g, 5.8 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was added CBr<sub>4</sub> (2.9 g, 8.7 mmol) and PPH<sub>3</sub> (2.3 g, 8.7 mmol). The reaction was stirred 20 at rt for 3 h and then concentrated and chromatographed on silica gel using a gradient elution from EtOAc/hexane (1:4) to EtOAc to give 3.2 g of a white solid: Mp = 131-134°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.64-7.30 (m, 10 H), 7.29 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12-7.09 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 6.77-6.73 (m, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.73 (t, 2 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS FAB 25 631/633 (M+H<sup>+</sup>, Br present).

5

Physical Data for Indole Phenethyl Bromides

The following compounds were made according to scheme 11 as described in Method 5 using the appropriately substituted indole selected from No. 35- No. 45.

10

**Example No. 47 1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-phenyl-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.57 - 7.32 (m, 7 H), 7.13 - 7.02 (m, 2 H), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 4.19 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 3.71 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.5$  Hz), 2.20 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 419 (M+).

15

**Example No. 48 5-Methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.27 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.03 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 6.99 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.5$  Hz), 6.80 - 6.69 (m, 5 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 4.19 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.4$  Hz), 3.78 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.72 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.5$  Hz), 2.16 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 479 (M+).

**Example No. 49 5-Benzyl-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

$M_p = 118-120^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 7.41 - 7.26 (m, 5 H), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.01 (d, 2 H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 6.78 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.78 - 6.74 (m, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.22 - 4.18 (m, 2 H), 4.04 (q, 2 H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.5$  Hz), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.33 (t, 3 H,  $J = 7.0$  Hz); MS eI m/z 569 (M+).

25

**Example No. 51 5-Benzyl-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

$M_p = 114-116^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (m, 2 H), 7.45 - 7.20 (m, 8 H), 7.14 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 2.7$  Hz, 9.0 Hz), 6.80 - 6.70 (m, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.19 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.27$  Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H,  $J = 6.4$  Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 543 (M+); CHN calc for  $C_{31}H_{27}BrFNO_2$ .

5   **Example No. 52   2-Benzo[1,3]dioxy-5-yl-5-benzyloxy-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 133-136°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.41-7.38 (m, 2 H), 7.35-7.30 (m, 1 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.00 (d, 1 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 6.90 (d, 1 H, 1.4 Hz), 6.82 - 6.78 (m, 2H), 6.77 (s, 4 H), 10 6.07 (s, 2 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J = 5.5Hz), 3.73 (t, 2H, J = 5.2Hz), 2.15 (s, 3H); MS eI m/z 569 (M+).

Example No. 52a   5-Benzyl-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(3-methoxy-4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole

15   Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 - 7.42 (m, 4 H), 7.40 - 7.30 (m, 6 H), 7.20 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12 - 7.10 (m, 2 H), 6.86 - 6.84 (m, 2 H), 6.81 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.78 (s, 4 H), 5.17 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H, J = 5.4 Hz), 3.63 (s, 3 H), 2.17 (s, 3 H); MS FAB m/z 662 (M+H<sup>+</sup>).

20   **Example No. 53   5-Benzyl-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 125 - 128°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.42 - 7.28 (m, 3 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.70 - 4.60 (m, 1 H), 4.19 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H, J = 4.4 Hz), 2.13 (s, 3 H), 1.30 (d, 6 H, J = 5.9 Hz); MS eI m/z 583 (M+).

30   **Example No. 54   5-Benzyl-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-cyclopentyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 110 - 112°C; 7.47 (d, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.38 (t, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.35 - 7.28 (m, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.78 - 6.74 (m, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.86 - 4.83 (m, 1 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.73 (t, 2 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 2.00 - 1.87 (m, 2 H), 1.79 - 1.65 (m, 4 H), 1.63 - 1.56 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 2950, 2910, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 609, 611 (M+, Br present).

- 47 -

5 Example No. 55 5-Benzyl-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-1H-indole

Mp = 106 -109°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.60 (d, 2 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.35 - 7.29 (m, 2 H), 7.48 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.39 (t, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.87 (dd, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz, 2.6 Hz), 10 6.77 - 6.71 (m, 4 H), 5.22 (s, 2 H), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 2.20 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 2910, 2850, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 595, 593 (M+)

15 Example No. 56 5-Benzyl-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-2-(4-methyl-phenyl)-1H-indole

Mp = 82 - 95°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.45 - 7.18 (m, 8 H), 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.81 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.19 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2 H, J = 4.4 Hz), 2.34 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 539 (M+).

20 Example No. 57 5-Benzyl-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-2-(4-chloro-phenyl)-1H-indole

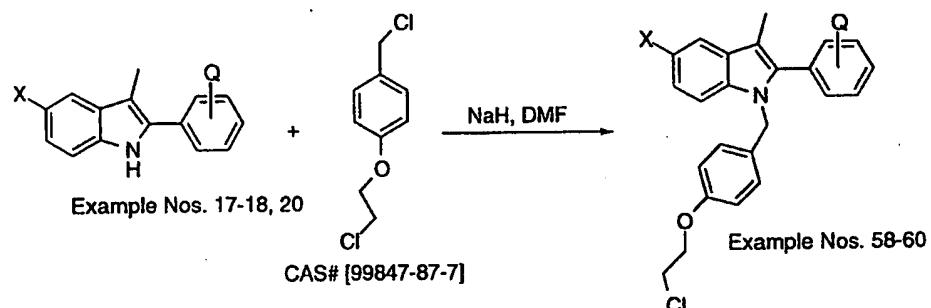
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.52 (d, 2H, J = 8.6Hz), 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 6.8Hz), 7.38 (m, 4 H), 7.36 (m, 1H), 7.25 (d, 1H, J = 9.0Hz), 7.14 (d, 1H, J = 2.4Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.72 (m, 4H), 5.17 (s, 2H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 4.19 (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.72 (t, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.16 (s, 3H); MS eI m/z 559 (M+).

- 48 -

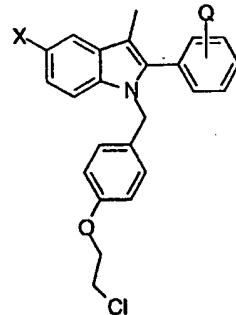
5

Data for some 3-methylindole phenylethyl chlorides used as intermediates

Scheme 12



10



15

Table 5

Example No.	X	Q
No. 58	OBn	3'-OBn
No. 59	OBn	3'-F, 4'-OBn
No. 60	OBn	4'-OCF <sub>3</sub>

- 49 -

5        Experimental Procedure For 3-Methylindole Phenethylchloride

Synthesis

Method 5a

Illustrated For Example No. 58

10      5-Benzyl-1H-indole

To a solution of 9.7 g (0.0231 mol) of 5-benzyl-1H-indole (indole example No. 17) in 80 mL of dry DMF was added 0.85 g of sodium hydride (60% in mineral oil). After allowing this mixture to stir for 30 minutes (until no more bubbling was indicated), 4.8 g of 1-chloromethyl-4-(2-chloroethoxy)-benzene CAS No. [99847-87-7] was added. The reaction mixture was allowed to react at room temperature overnight. 200 mL of ethyl acetate were added to the reaction mixture and then washed with water (3 x 100 mL). The organic solution was collected, washed with saturated brine, removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to dryness in a rotary evaporator. The product was recrystallized in ethyl acetate.

15      Mp = 125 - 127°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.46 (d, 2 H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.35 (m, 7 H), 7.33 - 7.28 (m, 2 H), 7.23 - 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.13 - 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 7.07 - 7.04 (m, 1 H), 6.94 - 6.92 (d, 2 H, J = 6.1 Hz), 6.83 - 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz), 6.78 - 6.72 (m, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.04 (s, 2 H), 4.13 - 4.10 (t, 2 H, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.86 - 3.84 (t, 2 H, J = 5.1 Hz), 2.14 (s, 3 H); IR 3420, 2900 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 587 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>34</sub>ClNO<sub>3</sub>.

Physical Data for Indole Phenethyl Chlorides

30

The following compounds were made according to scheme 12 as described in Method 5a using the appropriately substituted indoles No. 18, No. 20.

35      Example No. 59 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-3-fluoro-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-chloroethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole

Mp = 88-91°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.49-7.43 (m, 4H), 7.43-7.28 (m, 7H), 7.26-7.21 (m, 2H), 7.13-7.09 (m, 2H), 6.88-6.72 (m, 5H), 5.21 (s, 2H), 5.18 (s, 2H), 5.11

- 50 -

5 (s, 2H), 4.13 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 3.87 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.2$  Hz), 2.16 (s, 3H); MS eI m/z 605 (M+); CHN calcd for  $C_{38}H_{33}ClFNO_3$ .

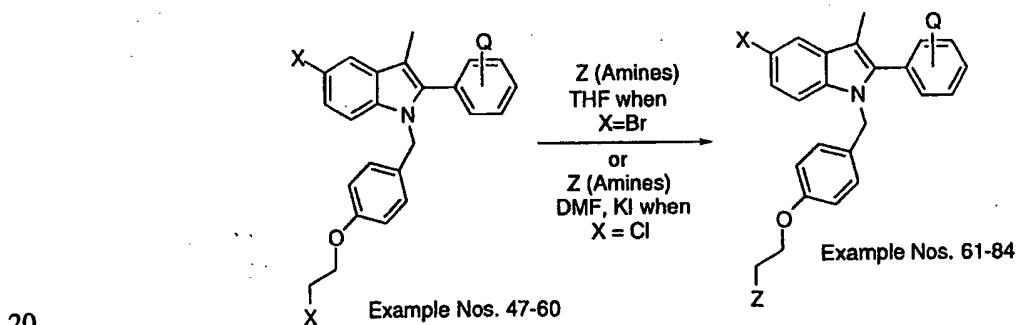
**Example No. 60 5-Benzyl-1-[4-(2-chloro-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-2-(4-trifluoromethoxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

10  $\text{Mp} = 108 - 110^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.49 - 7.48 (m, 6 H), 7.40 - 7.25 (m, 4 H), 7.17 - 7.16 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.9$  Hz), 6.88 - 6.84 (m, 1 H), 6.77 - 6.72 (m, 4 H), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 5.14 - 5.13 (d, 2 H,  $J = 2.3$  Hz), 4.16 - 4.11 (m, 2 H), 3.89 - 3.84 (m, 2 H), 2.19 - 2.17 (m, 3 H); IR 3400, 2900, 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 566 (M $^+$ ); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{22}\text{ClF}_3\text{NO}_3 + 0.25 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

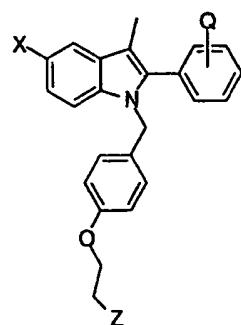
15

## Aminoethoxy indoles

### Scheme 13



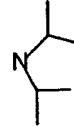
20



- 51 -

5

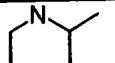
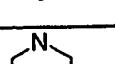
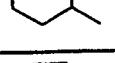
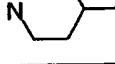
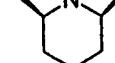
Table 6

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 61	OBn	4'-OEt	
No. 62	OBn	H	
No. 63	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 64	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 65	OBn	4'-OBn	

- 52 -

5

Table 6 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 66	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 66a	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 67	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 68	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 69	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 70	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 71	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 71a	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 72	OBn	4'-F	

- 53 -

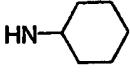
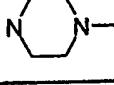
5

Table 6 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 72a	OBn	4'-F	
No. 72b	OBn	4'-Cl	
No. 73	OBn	3',4'-OCH <sub>2</sub> O-	
No. 74	OBn	4'-O-iPr	
No. 75	OBn	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>	
No. 76	OBn	3'-OBn	
No. 77	OBn	3'-OBn	
No. 78	OBn	4'-OBn,3'-F	
No. 79	OBn	4'-OBn,3'-F	

5

Table 6 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 80	OBn	3'-OMe	
No. 81	OBn	4'-OCF <sub>3</sub>	
No. 82	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 83	OBn	4'-OBn	
No. 84	OBn	3'-OMe	

Experimental Procedure For 3-Methyl aminoethoxyindole SynthesisMethod 6

10

Illustrated For Example No. 63Substitution of the Bromide

15

5-BenzylOxy-2-(4-benzylOxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

20

A solution of example No. 50 (3.2 g, 5.0 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was treated with piperidine (5.0 mL, 50 mmol) and heated to reflux. After 5 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated and taken up in EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and column chromatographed on silica gel using a gradient elution of EtOAc/Hexane to EtOAc. The product (2.7 g) was a white solid with a Mp = 93-95°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48-7.46 (m, 4 H), 7.42-7.38 (m, 4 H), 7.38-7.32 (m, 2 H), 7.29 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.12-7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2

- 55 -

5 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 2.60-2.50 (m, 2 H), 2.41-2.30 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.47-1.42 (m, 4 H), 1.36-1.32 (m, 2 H); MS FAB 637 (M+H<sup>+</sup>).

Alternative Procedure

Method 6a

10 Substitution of chlorides

Synthesis illustrated for product No. 76

15 **Example No. 76 5-Benzyl-2-(3-benzyl-2-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl)-1H-indole**

20 To a solution of 1.1 g (0.00953 mol) of 5-benzyl-2-(3-benzyl-1H-indole) (example No. 58) in 10 mL of DMF was added 1.1 mL (0.0112 mol) of piperidine, and 0.93 g (0.00561 mol) of potassium iodide. The reaction mixture was heated to ~40-50° C for 4 hours. After cooling the reaction mixture to room temperature, 150 mL of ethyl acetate were added and the mixture was washed with water (3 x 100 mL). The organic solution was collected, washed with saturated brine, removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to yield 1.0 g of product of the product after purification.

25 Mp = 125 - 126°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.41 - 7.35 (m, 7 H), 7.33 - 7.28 (m, 2 H), 7.23 - 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 7.13 - 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.06 - 7.03 (m, 1 H), 6.95 - 6.91 (m, 2 H), 6.83 - 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz), 6.75 - 6.70 (m, 4 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.02 (s, 2 H), 3.93 - 3.90 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.56 - 2.53 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.49 (30 - 2.48 (m, 4 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.46 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.35 - 1.31 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 636 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>44</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

Physical data for the amine substituted compounds

The following compounds were prepared by scheme 13 using method 6.

35 Except for examples No. 76- No. 84 which were prepared using method 6a.

5   **Example No. 61 5-Benzyl-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

10   Mp = 188 - 191°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 7.40 - 7.25 (m, 5 H), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 7.01 (d, 2 H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 6.78 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.73 (s, 4H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 4.05 (q, 2H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 3.93 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.0$  Hz), 2.55 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.7$  Hz), 2.41 - 2.35 (m, 4 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.46 - 1.40 (m, 4H), 1.38 - 1.30 (m, 5 H); MS eI m/z 574 (M+).

15   **Example No. 62 5-Benzyl-2-phenyl-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

20   Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.50-7.43 (m, 4 H), 7.42-7.37 (m, 5 H), 7.33-7.30 (m, 1 H), 7.22 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.81 (d, 1 H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.90 (t, 2 H,  $J = 6.1$  Hz), 2.81-2.75 (m, 2 H), 2.68-2.59 (m, 4 H), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.58-1.43 (m, 8 H); MS eI m/z 544 (M+).

25   **Example No. 64 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

30   Mp = 106 - 107°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 4 H,  $J = 8.3$  Hz), 7.41 - 7.36 (m, 4 H), 7.36 - 7.30 (m, 2 H), 7.29 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.14 - 7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.90 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 2.76 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 2.64 - 2.56 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.58 - 1.44 (m, 8 H); MS FAB m/z 651 (M+H+).

35   **Example No. 65 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-diisopropylamino-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

40   Mp = 148 - 150°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 4 H,  $J = 8.3$  Hz), 7.41 - 7.36 (m, 4 H), 7.36 - 7.32 (m, 2 H), 7.28 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H,  $J = 9.0$  Hz), 7.13 - 7.08 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.76 - 6.68 (m, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.75 (t, 2 H,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 2.95 (m, 2 H), 2.67 (t, 2 H,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 0.93 (d, 12 H,  $J = 6.4$  Hz); MS FAB m/z 653 (M+H+).

5    Example No. 66    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-butyl-methylamino-1-ylethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

Mp = 101 - 104°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 4 H,  $J$  = 7.5 Hz), 7.40 - 7.25 (m, 8 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 7.12-7.08 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 6.5 Hz,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.91 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.9 Hz), 2.64-2.59 (m, 2 H), 2.35-2.29 (m, 2 H), 2.17 (s, 3 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.40-1.31 (m, 2 H), 1.25-1.19 (m, 2 H), 0.83 (t, 3 H, 7.2 Hz); MS esI m/z 638 (M+).

10    Example No. 66a    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(dimethylamino)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole

Mp = 123-124°C

15    Example No. 67    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(2-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole

20    Mp = 121°C

25    Example No. 68    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(3-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole

Mp = 90°C

30   

Example No. 69    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(4-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole

Mp = 98°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 4 H,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz), 7.42 - 7.36 (m, 4 H), 7.36 - 7.31 (m, 2 H), 7.28 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.6 Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 9.0 Hz), 7.12 - 7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.9 Hz), 2.85 - 2.78 (m, 2 H), 2.62 - 2.56 (m, 2 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.97 - 1.87 (m, 2 H), 1.55 - 1.47 (m, 2 H), 1.30 - 1.20 (m, 1 H), 1.15 - 1.02 (m, 2 H), 0.85 (d, 3 H,  $J$  = 6.6 Hz); MS esI m/z 651 (M+1)+.

35    Example No. 70    5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-((cis)-2,6-Dimethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole

Mp = 106 - 107°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 4 H,  $J$  = 8.1 Hz), 7.42 - 7.36 (m, 4 H), 7.37 - 7.31 (m, 2 H), 7.29 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 -

5 7.09 (m, 3 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.84 (t, 2 H,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 2.84 (t, 2 H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 2.44 - 2.37 (m, 2 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.60 - 1.43 (m, 3 H), 1.32 - 1.18 (m, 1 H), 1.16 - 1.06 (m, 2 H), 1.01 (d, 6 H,  $J = 6.2$  Hz).

10 Example No. 71 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-[4-[2-(1,3,3-trimethyl-6-aza-bicyclo[3.2.1]oct-6-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole  
Mp = 107°C; MS ESI m/z 705 (M+)

15 Example No. 71a (1S,4R)-5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-[4-[2-(2-Aza-bicyclo [2.2.1] hept-2-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole  
The (1S,2R)- 2-aza-bicyclo [2.2.1] heptane used to substitute the bromide was prepared according to the procedure outlined in Syn. Comm. 26(3), 577-584 (1996).  
20 Mp = 95 - 100°C;  $^1$ H NMR (DMSO) 7.32 - 6.55 (m, 21 H), 5.10 - 4.90 (m, 6 H), 3.69 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 2.65 - 2.5 (m, 3 H), 2.10 (s, 2 H), 2.0 (s, 3 H), 1.50 - 1.0 (m, 7 H).

25 Example No. 72 5-Benzyl-2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole  
Oil;  $^1$ H NMR (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.43 (m, 2 H), 7.42 - 7.33 (m, 4 H), 7.32 - 7.20 (m, 4 H), 7.13 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz, 6.7 Hz), 6.71 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.89 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 3.20 (m, 4 H), 2.74 (t, 2 H,  $J = 6.0$  Hz), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.60 - 1.40 (m, 8 H); MS eI m/z 562 (M+).

30 Example No. 72a 5-Benzyl-2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole  
Oil;  $^1$ H NMR (DMSO) 7.32 - 6.53 (m, 16 H), 5.00 (s, 2 H), 4.96 (s, 2 H), 3.77 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.8$  Hz), 3.22 - 3.14 (m, 4 H), 2.40 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.8$  Hz), 2.0 (s, 3 H), 1.29 - 35 1.17 (m, 6 H).

5   **Example No. 72b   5-Benzyl-2-(4-chloro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.52 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.6 Hz), 7.46 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 6.8 Hz), 7.41 - 7.37 (m, 4 H), 7.35 - 7.29 (m, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 9.0 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2.5 Hz), 6.72 - 6.65 (m, 4 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.90 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.9 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 6.0 Hz), 2.41 - 2.26 (m, 4 H), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.44 - 1.39 (m, 4 H), 1.38 - 1.29 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 564 (M+).

10   **Example No. 73   5-Benzyl-2-[3,4-methylenedioxy-phenyl]-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

15   Foam;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 7.0 Hz), 7.41-7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.33-7.29 (m, 1 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.2 Hz), 7.00 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 7.9 Hz), 6.90 (d, 1 H, 1.4 Hz), 6.82 - 6.78 (m, 2 H), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.07 (s, 2 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 6.0 Hz), 2.56 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 6.0 Hz), 2.41 - 2.35 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.48-1.41 (m, 4 H), 1.38-1.28 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 574 (M+).

20   **Example No. 74   5-Benzyl-2-[4-isopropoxy-phenyl]-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

25   Foam;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 7.7 Hz), 7.42 - 7.28 (m, 3 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.7 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.7 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.70 - 4.60 (m, 1 H), 3.92 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.7 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2 H, 5.7 Hz), 2.40 - 2.30 (bs, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.50 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.40 - 1.30 (m, 2 H), 1.28 (d, 6 H,  $J$  = 6.2 Hz); MS eI m/z 588 (M+).

30

Example No. 75   5-Benzyl-2-[4-methyl-phenyl]-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole

Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.46 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz), 7.45 - 7.18 (m, 8 H), 7.12 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz), 6.81 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.92 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.9 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.9 Hz), 2.45 - 2.30 (m, 7 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.50 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.48 - 1.35 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 544 (M+).

- 60 -

5   **Example No. 77 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-5-benzyloxy-2-(3-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp = 103 - 105°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 - 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.41 - 7.35 (m, 7 H), 7.32 - 7.29 (t, 2 H, 7.0 Hz), 7.23 - 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.13 - 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.1 Hz), 7.06 - 7.03 (m, 1 H), 6.95 - 6.91 (m, 2 H), 6.83 - 6.80 (m, 1 H), 6.75 - 6.73 (m, 4 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.02 (s, 2 H), 3.90 - 3.87 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.76 - 2.73 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.49 - 2.48 (m, 4 H), 2.13 (s, 3 H), 1.51 (s, 8 H); IR 3400, 2900 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 650 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

15   **Example No. 78 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyloxy-3-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Mp = 125-128°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.45 (m, 4 H), 7.43 - 7.28 (m, 7 H), 7.26 - 7.20 (m, 2 H), 7.14 - 7.09 (m, 2 H), 6.82 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.94 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 2.62 - 2.56 (m, 2 H), 2.41 - 2.36 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.45 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.40 - 1.31 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/Z 654 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>43</sub>FN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

**Example No. 79 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyloxy-3-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

25   Mp = 122-124°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.28 (m, 10 H), 7.26 - 7.20 (m, 2 H), 7.15 - 7.10 (m, 2 H), 6.88 - 6.76 (m, 2 H), 6.70 (s, 4 H), 5.22 (s, 2H), 5.16 (s, 2H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 3.92 - 3.86 (m, 2H), 2.82 - 2.65 (m, 2H), 2.65 - 2.55 (m, 4H), 2.15 (s, 3H), 1.60 - 1.4 (m, 8H); MS eI m/Z 668 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>45</sub>FN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

30   **Example No. 80 5-Benzyl-2-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Mp 86 - 87°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.50 - 7.49 (m, 2 H), 7.46 - 7.31 (m, 4 H), 7.24 - 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.15 - 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz), 7.00 - 6.93 (m, 2 H), 6.88 - 6.81 (m, 2 H), 6.75 (s, 4 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 3.96 - 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.71 (s, 3 H), 2.59 - 2.55 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 2.37 (s, 4 H), 2.18 (s, 3 H), 1.49 - 1.42 (m, 4 H), 1.37 - 1.34 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 561 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

5

**Example No. 81 5-Benzyl-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-trifluoromethoxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

10 Mp = 107 - 108°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.52 - 7.45 (m, 6 H), 7.41 - 7.26 (m, 4 H), 7.17 - 7.16 (d, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz), 6.87 - 6.84 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz, J = 6.4 Hz), 6.75 - 6.68 (m, 4 H), 5.18 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 3.95 - 3.91 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.58 - 2.54 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.38 - 2.34 (m, 4 H), 2.17 - 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.49 - 1.42 (m, 4 H), 1.35 - 1.34 (d, 2 H, J = 4.9 Hz); IR 3400, 2900, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 615 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>37</sub>H<sub>37</sub>F<sub>3</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

15

**Example No. 82 (2-[4-[5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethyl)-cyclohexyl-amine**

20 Mp = 87-90°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.46(dd, 4H, J= 6.9Hz, 0.6Hz), 7.42-7.27 (m, 9H), 7.19 (d, 1H, J= 9Hz), 7.14-7.08 (m, 3H), 6.80 (dd, 1H, J= 6.4Hz, 2.4Hz), 6.75- 6.70 (m, 4H), 5.15(s, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 5.13(s, 2H), 3.89 (t, 2H, J= 5.6), 2.84 (m, 2H), 2.48 (m, 1H), 2.14 (s, 3H), 1.80 ( m, 2H), 1.65 ( m, 2H), 1.61 (m, 1H), 0.96-1.19 (m, 5H); MS eI m/Z 650 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>.

25

**Example No. 83 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-methylpiperazin-1-yl]-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indole**

30 Mp = 88-91°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (m, 4H), 7.26-7.42 (m, 8H), 7.19 (d, 1H, J= 8.8), 7.10-1.12 (m, 3H), 6.80 (q, 1H, J= 6.3Hz, 2.4Hz), 6.73 (m, 4H), 5.15 (s, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 3.94 (t, 2H, J= 5.9Hz), 2.59 (t, 2H), 2.42 (m, 4H), 2.29 (m, 4H), 2.15 (s, 3H), 2.12 (s, 3H); MS eI m/Z 652 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>45</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

35

**Example No. 84 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-5-benzyl-2-(3-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole**

35 Mp = 103 - 105°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 - 7.45 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.41 - 7.35 (m, 7 H), 7.32 - 7.29 (t, 2 H, 7.0 Hz), 7.23 - 7.21 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.13 - 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 2.1 Hz), 7.06 - 7.03 (m, 1 H), 6.95 - 6.91 (m, 2 H), 6.83 - 6.80 (m, 1 H), 6.75 - 6.73 (m, 4 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.02 (s, 2 H), 3.90 - 3.87 (t, 2

- 62 -

5 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.76 - 2.73 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.49 - 2.48 (m, 4 H), 2.13 (s, 3 H), 1.51 (s, 8 H); IR 3400, 2900  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS  $\text{eI m/z}$  650 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{44}\text{H}_{46}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$ ,

**Data and procedures for compounds From Table 11 (ER Receptor Data Table, *infra*) of Text**

10

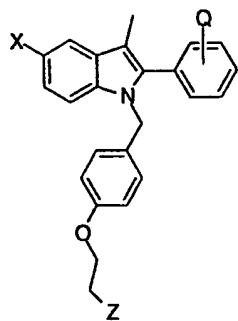


Table 7

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 85	H	H	
No. 86	H	4'-OH	

- 63 -

5

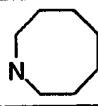
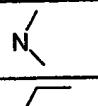
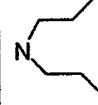
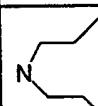
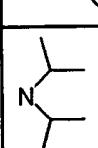
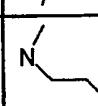
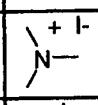
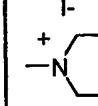
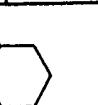
Table 7 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 87	OH	H	
No. 88	OMe	4'-OH	
No. 89	OH	4'-OMe	
No. 90	OMe	4'-OMe	
No. 91	OMe	4'-OMe	
No. 92	OH	4'-OEt	
No. 93	OH	4'-OEt	
No. 94	F	4'-OH	
No. 95	OH	H	
No. 96	OH	4'-OH	
No. 97	OH	4'-OH	
No. 98	OH	4'-OH	

- 64 -

5

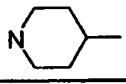
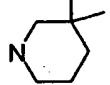
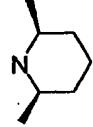
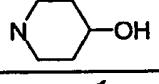
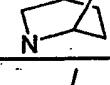
Table 7 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 99	OH	4'-OH	
No. 100	OH	4'-OH	
No. 101	OH	4'-OH	
No. 102	OH	4'-OH	
No. 103	OH	4'-OH	
No. 104	OH	4'-OH	
No. 105	OH	4'-OH	
No. 106	OH	4'-OH	
No. 107	OH	4'-OH	
No. 108	OH	4'-OH	

- 65 -

5

Table 7 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 109	OH	4'-OH	
No. 110	OH	4'-OH	
No. 111	OH	4'-OH	
No. 112	OH	4'-OH	
No. 113	OH	4'-OH	
No. 114	OH	4'-OH	
No. 115	OH	4'-OH	
No. 116	OH	4'-F	
No. 117	OH	4'-F	
No. 118	OH	3'-OMe,4'-OH	
No. 119	OH	3',4'-OCH2O-	

- 66 -

5

Table 7 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 120	OH	4'-O-iPr	
No. 121	OH	4'-O-iPr	
No. 122	OH	4'-O-Cp	
No. 123	OH	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>	
No. 124	OH	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>	
No. 125	OH	4'-Cl	
No. 126	OH	2',4',-Dimethoxy	
No. 127	OH	3'-OH	
No. 128	OH	3'-OH	
No. 129	OH	4'-OH,3'-F	
No. 130	OH	4'-OH, 3'-F	
No. 131	OH	3'-OMe	
No. 132	OH	4'-OCF <sub>3</sub>	

5

Hydrogenation of Indoles Containing Benzyl Ether(s)Method 7Illustrated For Example No. 97

10

2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol

15

A suspension of 10% Pd/C (1.1 g) in EtOH was treated with a solution of No. 63 (2.2 g, 3.4 mmol) in THF/EtOH. Cyclohexadiene (6.0 mL, 63 mmol) was added and the reaction was stirred for 48 hours. The catalyst was filtered through Celite and the reaction mixture was concentrated and chromatographed on silica gel using a gradient elution of MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1:19 to 1:10) to yield 0.8 g of the product as a white solid. Mp =109-113°C; CHN calc'd for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.5 H<sub>2</sub>O; <sup>1</sup>H NMR 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.95-3.93 (m, 2 H), 2.60-2.51 (m, 2 H), 2.39-2.38 (m, 4 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.46-1.45 (m, 4 H), 1.35-1.34 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3350 (br), 2920, 1620, 1510 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (EI) m/z 456.

20

Alternatively, the compounds may be dissolved in a THF/EtOH solution (or other appropriate solvent) and hydrogenated with H<sub>2</sub> and 10% Pd/C using either a ballon or Parr Hydrogenator. Either procedure is effective. In many of the examples, the compounds were made into acid addition salts. The procedure for the preparation of an HCl salt is given below (Method 8).

30

**Method 8**

35

1.0 g of Example No. 97 free base from the hydrogenation procedure above in a large test tube was dissolved in 20 mL of MeOH. This was treated with slow addition of 2.6 mL 1.0 N HCl and then 4.0 mL deionized water. The tube was partially opened to the atmosphere to encourage slow evaporation of the solvents. After about ten minutes, crystals began to appear and after 4 hours the solution was filtered and the solid crystals washed with water. The product was present as 0.42 g of white crystalline plates with a melting point of 184-185°C. The mother liquor yielded an

5 additional crop of 0.30 g of white solid with a melting point of 177-182°C. CHN calc'd for  $C_{29}H_{32}N_2O_3 + HCl + 1 H_2O$ .

Alternatively, the compounds can be made into quaternary ammonium salts. An example procedure for the synthesis of example No. 107 is given below (Method 9).

10

**Method 9****Example No. 107 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol methiodide**

15 0.8g of example No. 97 was dissolved in 18 mL THF and treated with 2 mL of methyl iodide. The solution was heated to reflux for an hour. The reaction was allowed to come to room temperature and the solids filtered to yield 0.72 g as a crystalline solid. Mp = 214 - 217°C, CHN calcd for  $C_{29}H_{32}N_2O_3 + CH_3I + 0.5 H_2O$ .

20 **Example No. 106 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-dimethyl-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol methiodide** was prepared similarly to No. 106 except using No. 100 for starting material: Mp = 245 - 250°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 9.66 (s, 1 H), 8.69 (s, 1 H), 7.16 (d, 2 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.84 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.81 - 6.75 (m, 6H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.7 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.34 (m, 2 H), 3.70 (t, 2 H, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.11 (s, 9 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3250, 1500, 1250; MS ei m/z 416 (M+); CHN calcd for  $C_{26}H_{28}N_2O_3 + 1.09 CH_3I + 0.8 H_2O$ .

**Physical Data for final, deprotected compounds**

30

The following compounds are either free bases, HCl salts or acetate salts. They were prepared according to the procedure outlined in method 7 using the appropriate benzyl ether for precursor. Where a compound from table 1 does not contain a free phenolic functionality, then it was unnecessary to debenzylate it and method 7 not applied. The physical data for these compounds (No. 85, No. 90- No. 91) is still presented below.

- 69 -

5    **Example No. 85 4-(3-Methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole} (HCl)**

10     $M_p = 134 - 137^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (DMSO) 10.33 (s, 1H), 7.56 - 7.38 (m, 6 H), 7.32 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.1$  Hz), 7.14 - 7.0 (m, 2 H), 6.80 (s, 4 H), 5.24 (s, 2 H), 4.28 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.0$  Hz), 3.50 - 3.40 (m, 4 H), 3.0 - 2.95 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.80 - 1.60 (m, 5 H), 1.40 - 1.35 (m, 1 H);  $\text{IR}$  3400, 2900, 1510, 1250  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ;  $\text{MS}$  (+)  $\text{FAB}$  m/z 425 [ $\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ ;  $\text{CHN}$  calcd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_2\text{O} + 1.0 \text{ HCl} + 1.0 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ .

15    **Example No. 86 4-(3-Methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-2-yl}-phenol hydrochloride (HCl)**

20     $M_p = 192 - 194^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (DMSO), 10.28 (s, 1 H), 9.75 (s, 1 H), 7.51 - 7.49 (m, 1H), 7.27 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 7.0$  Hz, 0.7 Hz), 7.18 (d, 2 H,  $J = 7.6$  Hz), 7.09 - 7.02 (m, 2 H), 6.86 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 6.80 (s, 4 H), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 4.28 (t, 2 H,  $J = 4.9$  Hz), 3.50 - 3.35 (m, 4 H), 3.0 - 2.85 (m, 2 H), 2.20 (s, 3 H), 1.80 - 1.60 (m, 5 H), 1.40 - 1.30 (m, 1 H);  $\text{IR}$  3400, 3100, 2600, 1500, 1225  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ;  $\text{MS}$  eI m/z 440 ( $\text{M}^+$ );  $\text{CHN}$  calc for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2 + 1 \text{ HCl}$ .

25    **Example No. 87 3-Methyl-2-phenyl-1-[4-(2-piperidine-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

30     $M_p = 228-230^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H NMR}$  10.1 (brs, 1 H), 8.76 (s, 1 H), 7.55 - 7.45 (m, 5 H), 7.10 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.85 - 6.80 (m, 5 H), 6.61 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 4.25 (t, 2 H,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.47-3.35 (m, 4 H), 2.96-2.87 (m, 2 H), 2.12 (s, 3 H), 1.75-1.65 (m, 5 H), 1.31-1.28 (m, 1 H);  $\text{MS}$  eI m/z 440 ( $\text{M}^+$ );  $\text{CHN}$  calcd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2 + 1 \text{ HCl} + .33 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ ;  $\text{IR}$  (KBr) 3200, 2500, 1450, 1200  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

35   

35    **Example No. 88 4-(5-Methoxy-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indol-2-yl}-phenol**

40     $M_p = 87-90^\circ\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (DMSO) 9.67 (s, 1 H), 7.16 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 7.16 (1 H buried), 6.98 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.85 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.69 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8, 2.4$  Hz), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 3.94 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.7$  Hz), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 2.63-2.50 (m, 2 H), 2.43-2.31 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.49-1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.39-

- 70 -

5 1.25 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400 (br), 2920, 1610, 1520  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 470; CHN  
calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 0.1 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ .

**Example No. 89 2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

10 Mp = 188-189°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 8.70 (s, 1 H), 7.27 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 7.06 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 7.02 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.81 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.58 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8, 2.4$  Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 2.56 (t, 2 H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 2.41-2.32 (m, 4 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.47-1.41 (m, 4 H), 1.34-1.31 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 470; CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 0.1 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ .

**Example No. 90 5-Methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole (HCL)**

20 Mp = 188-191°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.35 (brs, 1 H), 7.27 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.03 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 6.99 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.5$  Hz), 6.82 - 6.78 (m, 4 H), 6.71 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz,  $J = 2.5$  Hz), 5.17 (s, 2 H), 4.31 - 4.22 (m, 2 H), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.43 - 3.36 (m, 4 H), 2.97 - 2.83 (m, 2 H), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.80 - 1.59 (m, 5 H), 1.41 - 1.26 (m, 1 H); IR (KBr) 2920, 1450, 1250  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 484 (M+); CHN calc for  $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 1 \text{ HCl}$ .

25 **Example No. 91 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-5-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole (HCL)**

Mp = 161-163°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.65 (brs, 1 H), 7.27 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.03 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 6.99 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.5$  Hz), 6.82 - 6.77 (m, 4 H), 6.71 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz,  $J = 2.5$  Hz), 5.17 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (m, 2 H), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.44 - 3.30 (m, 4 H), 3.17 (m, 2 H), 2.16 (s, 3 H), 1.82 - 1.77 (m, 4 H), 1.63 - 1.48 (m, 4 H); MS eI m/z 499 (M+); CHN calc for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{38}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 1 \text{ HCl}$ .

35 **Example No. 92 2-(4-Ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 173-175°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 8.69 (s, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.8$  Hz), 6.99 (dd, 2 H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz,  $J = 2.0$  Hz),

- 71 -

5 6.80 (d , 1 H , J = 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s , 4H), 6.59 (dd , 1 H , J = 8.5 J = 2.2),  
5.09 (s , 2H), 4.05 (q , 2 H, J = 7.03 Hz), 3.93 (t , 2 H , J = 6.0 Hz), 2.62 - 2.56  
(m , 2H), 2.41 - 2.36 (m , 4 H), 2.09 (s , 3H), 1.45 - 1.41 (m , 4H), 1.38 - 1.30  
(m , 5H); MS eI m/z 484 (M+); CHN calc for  $C_{31}H_{36}N_2O_3 + .25H_2O$ .

10 Example No. 93 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-ethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol  
Mp = 133-135°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 8.69 (s , 1 H), 7.25 (d , 2 H , J = 8.8Hz), 7.04  
(d , 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (dd , 2 H , J = 6.8 Hz , J = 2.0 Hz),  
6.80 (d , 1 H , J = 2.2Hz), 6.73 (s , 4H), 6.59 (dd , 1 H , J = 8.5 Hz, J = 2.2 Hz),  
5.09 (s , 2H), 4.05 (q , 2H, J = 7.03 Hz), 3.90 (t , 2H , J = 6.1 Hz), 2.75 (t , 2H , J  
= 6.0 Hz), 2.62 - 2.58 (m , 4 H), 2.09 (s , 3 H), 1.58 - 1.44 (m , 8 H), 1.33  
(t , 3H , J = 7.0 Hz); IR (KBr) 2930 , 1470 , 1250  $CM^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 498 (M+); CHN  
calc for  $C_{32}H_{38}N_2O_3$ .

20 Example No. 94 4-{5-Fluoro-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-2-yl}-phenol (HCl)  
Mp = 223-225°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 10.30 (br s , 1H), 7.27 - 7.23 (m , 2 H),  
7.17 (d , 2 H , J = 8.6 Hz), 6.88 - 6.79 (m , 7H), 5.20 (s , 2H), 4.28  
(t , 2H , J = 5.0 Hz), 3.42 - 3.35 (m , 4 H), 3.00 - 2.85 (m , 2 H), 2.14 (s , 3 H),  
1.78 - 1.70 (m ; 4 H) , 1.67 - 1.59 (m , 1 H), 1.40 - 1.26 (m , 1 H); MS eI m/z 458  
(M+).

Example No. 95 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-2-phenyl-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)  
30 Mp = 203-204°C ;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 10.50 (brs , 1 H), 8.80 (s , 1 H), 7.50 - 7.38  
(m , 5 H); 7.10 (d , 1 H, J = 8.8Hz), 6.83 - 6.77 (m , 5 H), 6.60 (d , 1 H , J = 6.6  
Hz), 5.15 (s , 2H ), 4.26 (t , 2 H , J = 5.2 Hz), 3.45 - 3.35 (m , 4 H), 3.21-3.10 (m ,  
2 H), 2.12 (s , 3H), 1.85-1.75 (m , 4 H) , 1.70 - 1.51 (m , 4 H); MS eI m/z 454 (M+);  
CHN calc for  $C_{30}H_{34}N_2O_2 + 1 HCl$ .

- 72 -

5   **Example No. 96 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-pyrollidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**  
Mp = 105-110°C; CHN calc'd for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>30</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.4 H<sub>2</sub>O; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.65 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 2 H), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6, 2.2 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.95 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.39-3.23 (m, 4 H), 2.80-2.75 (m, 2 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.67-1.64 (m, 4 H); IR (KBr) 3410 (br), 1620, 1510 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (EI) m/z 442

10   **Example No. 97 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**  
Mp = 168 - 171°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.11 (br s, 1 H), 9.70 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H); 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.85 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.80 - 6.77 (m, 5 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.26 (t, 2 H, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.48 - 3.30 (m, 4 H), 3.22 - 3.08 (m, 2 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.83 - 1.76 (m, 4 H), 1.67 - 1.48 (m, 4 H); IR (KBr) 3500 br, 3250 br, 2900, 1610; MS FAB m/z 471 (M+H<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 2.5 H<sub>2</sub>O + HCl.

15   **Example No. 98 Acetate Salt of Example No. 97**  
Made by the precipitation of No. 97 free base from acetone and acetic acid.  
20   Mp = 174 - 178°C

25   **Example No. 99 1-[4-(2-Azocan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**  
Mp = 98 - 102°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.63 (s, 1 H), 8.68 (s, 1 H), 7.15 - 7.13 (m, 2 H), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.5 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 2 H, J = 2.0 Hz, 6.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.89 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 2.74 (t, 2 H, J = 5.4 Hz), 2.55 (bs, 4 H), 2.08 (s, 3 H), 1.55 (s, 2 H), 1.46 (s, 8 H); IR 3400, 2900, 1250 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS ei m/z 484 (M<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + .30 H<sub>2</sub>O.

- 73 -

5   **Example No. 100   2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-dimethyl-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 95 - 105°C; IR (KBr) 3400 br, 2900, 1610  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 416 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$  + 0.5  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

10   **Example No. 101   2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-diethyl-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 100-107°C; CHN calc'd for  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$  + 0.25  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, 2.2 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.95-3.85 (m, 2 H), 2.80-2.60 (m, 2 H), 2.58-2.40 (m, 4 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 0.93 (t, 6 H, J = 7.0 Hz); IR (KBr) 3410 (br), 2950, 1610, 1510  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS FAB 445 (M+H+).

20   **Example No. 102   1-[4-(2-Dipropylamino-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 83 - 86°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.78 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.72 (m, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.2 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.88 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.80 - 2.63 (m, 2 H), 2.59 - 2.45 (m, 4 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.41 - 1.30 (m, 4 H), 0.79 (t, 6 H, J = 7.3 Hz); IR 3400, 2900, 1250; MS FAB m/z 473 [M+H+]; CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$  + .20  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

30   **Example No. 103   1-[4-(2-Dibutylamino-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Foam;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.63 (s, 1H), 8.66 (s, 1 H), 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 4.2 Hz), 6.78 - 6.71 (m, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz J = 2.4 Hz), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.88 (t, 2 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 2.68-2.62 (m, 2H), 2.42-2.34 (m, 4 H), 2.08 (s, 3 H), 1.38 - 1.19 (m, 8H), 0.82 (t, 6 H, J = 7.2 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400, 1450  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 501 (M+).

- 74 -

5   **Example No. 104   1-[4-(2-Diisopropylamino-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 96 - 102°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.83 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.77 - 6.69 (m, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.75 (t, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.01 - 2.92 (m, 2 H), 2.67 (t, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 0.93 (d, 12 H, 6.6 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400 br, 2940, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS FAB m/z 473 (M+H<sup>+</sup>); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.5 H<sub>2</sub>O.

15   **Example No. 105   1-[4-[2-(Butyl-methyl-amino)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 102-107°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.60 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.82 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.78 (d, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.64-2.59 (m, 2 H), 2.38-2.29 (m, 2 H), 2.20 (br s, 3 H), 2.08 (s, 3 H), 1.40-1.31 (m, 2 H), 1.25-1.19 (m, 2 H), 0.83 (t, 3 H, 7.2 Hz); IR (KBr) 3420, 1460, 1230 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 638 (M<sup>+</sup>).

25   **Example No. 108   2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(2-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxyl-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 121 - 123°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.65 (s, 1 H), 8.68 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.97 - 3.86 (m, 2 H), 2.95 - 2.73 (m, 2 H), 2.62 - 2.53 (m, 1 H), 2.36 - 2.14 (m, 2 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.61 - 1.30 (m, 4 H), 1.28 - 1.09 (m, 2 H), 0.98 (d, 3 H, J = 5.1 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400, 2920, 2850, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>; CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

35   **Example No. 109   2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(3-methyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxyl-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 121 - 123°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (dd, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz, 1.4 Hz), 7.04 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 1.2 Hz), 6.84 (dd, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 1.7 Hz), 6.79 (s, 1 H), 6.79 (s, 4 H), 6.56

- 75 -

5 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.94 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 2.86 - 2.71 (m, 2 H),  
2.63 - 2.50 (m, 2 H), 2.48 (s, 3 H), 1.92 - 1.79 (m, 2 H), 1.63 - 1.35 (m, 5 H), 0.79  
(d, 3 H, J = 5.2 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400, 2910, 1625  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$  +  
0.25  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

10 **Example No. 110 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[2-(4-methyl-**

piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl}-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)

Mp = 154 - 162°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.00 (brs, 1 H), 9.71 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H),  
7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.85 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.83  
- 6.77 (m, 4 H), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.27

15 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.51 - 3.35 (m, 4 H), 3.01 - 2.87 (m, 2 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.74  
(d, 2 H, J = 13.4 Hz), 1.61 - 1.37 (m, 4 H), 0.88 (d, 3 H, J = 6.4 Hz); IR (KBr)  
3410, 2910, 1620  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 470 (M+H+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$  + HCl +  
2  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

20 **Example No. 111 1-[4-[2-(3,3-Dimethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-**

benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 100°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.65 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.15  
(d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79  
(d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.4 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H),  
3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 2.60-2.50 (m, 2 H), 2.37-2.25 (m, 2 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H),  
2.10-1.99 (m, 2 H), 1.46 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 1.13 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz), 0.86  
(s, 6 H); MS eI m/z 484.

30 **Example No. 112 1-[4-[2-((cis)-2,6-Dimethyl-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-**

benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 114 - 121°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.62 (s, 1 H), 8.64 (s, 1 H), 7.11  
(d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.01 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.81 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.76  
(d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.72 - 6.66 (m, 4 H), 6.53 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 5.06  
(s, 2 H), 3.86 - 3.72 (m, 2 H), 2.86 - 2.76 (m, 2 H), 2.43 - 2.35 (m, 2 H), 2.06  
(s, 3 H), 1.78 - 1.59 (m, 3 H), 1.29 - 1.17 (m, 1 H), 1.12 - 0.92 (m, 8 H); IR (KBr)  
3400 br, 2920, 1630  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS FAB m/z 485 (M+H+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$  +  
0.1 acetone + 0.75  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

- 76 -

5   **Example No. 113 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[4-[2-(4-hydroxy-piperidin-1-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 80 - 90°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.66 (s, 1 H), 8.68 (s, 1 H), 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.84 (dd, 2 H, J = 2.0 Hz, 6.6 Hz), 6.78 (d, 1 H, 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 4.50 (d, 1 H, J = 4.2 Hz), 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 3.40 (m, 2 H), 2.72 (m, 2 H), 2.60 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 2.15-2.05 (m, 1 H), 1.75-1.63 (m, 2 H), 1.42 - 1.28 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900, 1250  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 472 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$  + .11  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ .

15   **Example No. 114 (1S,4R)-1-[4-[2-(2-Aza-bicyclo [2.2.1] hept-2-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 125 - 130°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.65 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.13 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.5 Hz), 6.83 (dd, 2 H, J = 2.0 Hz, 6.6 Hz), 6.78 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.55 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.95 - 3.8 (m, 2 H), 2.90 - 2.70 (3 H), 2.30 - 2.20 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.70 - 1.60 (m, 1 H), 1.60 - 1.30 (m, 4 H), 1.25 - 1.15 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2950, 1500; MS (+) FAB m/z 469 [M+H] $^+$ ; CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$  + .34 EtOAc.

25   **Example No. 115 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[2-(1,3,3-trimethyl-6-aza-bicyclo[3.2.1]oct-6-yl)-ethoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 98 - 100°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.84 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.75 - 6.69 (m, 4 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 3.83 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.12 - 3.07 (m, 1 H), 2.94 - 2.87 (m, 1 H), 2.85 (d, 1 H, J = 9.2 Hz), 2.78 - 2.70 (m, 1 H), 2.17 (d, 1 H, J = 9.2 Hz), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.55 - 1.42 (m, 2 H), 1.29 (q, 2 H, J = 13.6 Hz), 1.14 (s, 3 H), 1.11 - 1.02 (m, 2 H), 0.96 (s, 3 H), 0.82 (s, 3 H); IR (KBr) 3400 br, 2940, 2900, 1630  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS ESI m/z 525 (M+H $^+$ ); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{34}\text{H}_{40}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$  + 0.5  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

35   **Example No. 116 2-(4-Fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidine-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Mp = 201 - 203°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.22 (s, 1 H), 8.78 (s, 1 H), 7.45 - 7.35

5 (m, 2 H), 7.34 - 7.25 (m, 2 H), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.90 - 6.70 (m, 5 H), 6.61  
 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (t, 2 H, 4.8 Hz), 3.50 - 3.34  
 (m, 4 H), 3.0 - 2.85 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.80 (m, 5 H), 1.40 - 1.25 (m, 1 H);  
 MS eI m/z 458 (M+); CHN calcd for  $C_{29}H_{31}FN_2O_2 + 1 HCl$ .

10 **Example No. 117 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 181 - 184°C;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 10.68 (s, 1 H), 8.80 (s, 1 H), 7.50 - 7.36 (m, 2 H), 7.34 - 7.26 (m, 2 H), 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.86 - 6.73 (m, 5 H), 6.63 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.5 Hz), 5.13 (s, 2H), 4.29 (t, 2 H, J = 5.2 Hz), 3.50 - 3.30 (m, 4 H), 3.20 - 3.08 (m, 2 H), 2.11 (s, 3 H), 1.90 - 1.70 (m, 4 H), 1.68 - 1.45 (m, 4 H);  
 15 IR (KBr) 3500, 3100, 2910, 1450, 1250  $cm^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 472 (M+); CHN calcd for  $C_{30}H_{33}FN_2O_2 + 1 HCl$ .

20 **Example No. 118 2-(3-Methoxy-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Mp = 161-163°C ;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 10.12 (brs, 1H) , 9.25 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s , 1H), 7.05 (d, 1H , J = 8.5Hz), 6.85 - 6.79 (m, 8 H), 6.57 (dd , 1H , J = 8.5Hz , J = 2.2Hz), 5.13 (s , 2H), 4.27 (t , 2H , J = 5.0Hz), 3.64 (s , 3H), 3.44 - 3.37 (m , 4 H), 2.93 - 2.85 (m , 2H), 2.11 (s , 3H), 1.80 - 1.60 (m , 5 H), 1.40 - 1.25 (m , 1H); MS eI m/z 486 ( M+); CHN calc for  $C_{30}H_{34}N_2O_4 + 1HCl + 1 H_2O$ ; IR (KBr) 3190, 1470, 1230  $cm^{-1}$ .

25 **Example No. 119 2-Benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

30 Mp = 122-125°C ;  $^1H$  NMR (DMSO) 9.80 (brs , 1 H), 8.73 (s , 1 H), 7.07 (d , 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.02 (d , 1 H, J = 8.0 Hz) , 6.89 (d , 1 H,J = 1.7 Hz), 6.80 - 6.75 (m , 6 H), 6.58 (dd , 1 H , J = 6.4 Hz, J = 2.2Hz), 6.06 (s , 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 4.30 - 4.19 (m , 2 H), 3.51 - 3.30 (m , 4 H), 2.99-2.85 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s , 3 H), 1.81-1.59 (m , 5 H), 1.41-1.26 (m , 1 H); MS eI m/z 484(M+); CHN calc for 35  $C_{30}H_{32}N_2O_4 + HCl + .26 H_2O$ .

5   **Example No. 120 2-(4-Isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Mp = 120 - 125°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.18 (s, 1 H), 8.73 (s, 1 H), 7.25 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.99 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.82 - 6.80 (m, 5 H), 6.59 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.67 - 4.61 (m, 1 H), 4.27 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.50 - 3.35 (m, 4 H), 3.0 - 2.85 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.80 - 1.60 (m, 5 H), 1.40 - 1.25 (m, 7 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 3000, 1500, 1250; MS eI m/z 498 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>38</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1.0 HCl + .70 H<sub>2</sub>O.

15   **Example No. 121 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-isopropoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Mp = 120 - 125°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.36 (s, 1 H), 8.73 (s, 1 H), 7.26 - 7.23 (m, 2 H), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.01 - 6.98 (m, 2 H), 6.85 - 6.75 (m, 5 H), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 4.67 - 4.61 (m, 1 H), 4.27 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.50 - 3.30 (m, 4 H), 3.20 - 3.10 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.85 - 1.75 (m, 4 H), 1.65 - 1.50 (m, 4 H), 1.27 (d, 6 H, J = 6.1 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400, 1500, 1250; MS eI m/z 512 (M+); Calcd for C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1.0 HCl + .5 H<sub>2</sub>O.

25   **Example No. 122 2-(4-Cyclopenyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 121 - 135°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.80 (br s, 1 H), 8.72 (s, 1 H), 7.24 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.98 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.83 - 6.78 (m, 5 H), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 4.86 - 4.82 (m, 1 H), 4.25 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.50 - 3.38 (m, 4 H), 2.92 (q, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 2.11 (s, 3 H), 1.98 - 1.85 (m, 2 H), 1.81 - 1.56 (m, 11 H), 1.41 - 1.29 (m, 1 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2920, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 524 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.5 H<sub>2</sub>O.

35   **Example No. 123 3-Methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-trifluoromethyl-phenyl)-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 174°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.8 (s, 1 H), 7.82 (d, 2 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.59 (d, 2 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.17 (d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.86 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.75 - 6.68 (m, 4 H), 6.65 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.16 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 2.62

- 79 -

5 - 2.56 (m, 2 H), 2.42 - 2.32 (m, 4 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.48 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.39 -  
1.29 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3410, 2910, 2850, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 508 (M+); CHN  
calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>31</sub>F<sub>3</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

Example No. 124 3-Methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-p-  
10 tolyl-1H-indol-5-ol  
Mp = 162 - 164°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.70 (s, 1 H), 7.28 - 7.24 (m, 4 H), 7.07 (d, 1  
H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.81 (d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 6.58 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz,  
8.8 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.45 -  
2.30 (m, 7 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.50 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.48 - 1.35 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr)  
15 3400, 2900, 1200; MS eI m/z 454 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>.

Example No. 125 2-(4-Chloro-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-  
10 ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)  
Mp = 161-164°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.12 (brs, 1H), 8.80 (s, 1H), 7.53  
20 (d, 2H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.36 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8Hz), 6.85-  
6.75 (m, 5 H), 6.63 (dd, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 5.14 (s, 2H), 4.29-4.22  
(m, 2H), 3.45-3.36 (m, 4 H), 2.97 - 2.84 (m, 2H), 2.11 (s, 3H), 1.83 - 1.61  
(m, 5H), 1.37 - 1.25 (m, 1H); MS eI m/z 475 (M+); CHN calc for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>31</sub>ClN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>  
+HCl + .25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

25 Example No. 126 2-(2,4-Dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-  
piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol

Mp = 85 - 92°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.62 (s, 1 H), 7.10 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.01  
(d, 1 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.80 - 6.70 (m, 5 H), 6.69 (d, 1 H, 2.2 Hz), 6.59  
30 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.5 Hz), 6.52 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 5.02  
(d, 1 H, J = 6.5 Hz), 4.83 (d, 1 H, J = 6.3 Hz), 4.0 - 3.90 (m, 2 H), 3.80 (s, 3 H),  
3.67 (s, 3 H), 2.65 - 2.50 (m, 2 H), 2.45 - 2.30 (m, 4 H), 2.0 (s, 3 H), 1.55 - 1.40  
(m, 4 H), 1.39 - 1.30 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900, 1520, 1250; MS eI m/z 500  
(M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub> + .05 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>.

- 80 -

5   **Example No. 127   2-(3-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 115 - 118°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.57 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H), 7.27 - 7.23 (t, 1 H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.06 - 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.81 - 6.74 (m, 8 H), 6.59 - 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.3 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 3.94 - 3.91 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.57 - 2.54 (t, 2 H, J = 5.8 Hz), 2.36 (s, 4 H), 2.11 (s, 3 H), 1.45 - 1.41 (m, 4 H), 1.34 - 1.33 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400, 2900 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 456 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1.0 H<sub>2</sub>O.

15   **Example No. 128   1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(3-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-5-ol**

Mp = 94 - 97°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.58 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H), 7.27 - 7.23 (t, 1 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.07 - 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 6.81 - 6.74 (m, 8 H), 6.59 - 6.56 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, J = 6.3 Hz), 5.12 (s, 2 H), 3.9 (m, 2 H), 2.80 (s, 2 H), 2.65 (s, 4 H), 2.11 (s, 3 H), 1.54 - 1.50 (m, 8 H); IR 3400, 2900 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 470 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 0.75 H<sub>2</sub>O + 0.23 Ethyl Acetate.

20   **Example No. 129   2-(3-Fluoro-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 117-119°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.1 (s, 1H), 8.71 (s, 1H), 7.10 - 6.95 (m, 4 H), 6.80 (d, 1H, J = 2.2Hz), 6.74 (s, 4H), 6.59 (dd, 1H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.5 Hz), 5.1 (s, 2H), 3.93 (t, 2H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.56 (t, 2H, J = 5.8 Hz), 2.44 - 2.30 (m, 4H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.45 -1.40 (m, 4H), 1.36 -1.32 (m, 2H); MS eI m/Z 475 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>31</sub>FN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

30   **Example No. 130   2-(3-Fluoro-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

Mp = 88 - 91°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.10 ( s, 1H), 8.71 ( s, 1H), 7.12 - 6.94 (m, 4 H), 6.80( d, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz), 6.74 ( s, 4 H), 6.58 ( dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.5 Hz), 5.10 ( s, 2 H), 3.91( t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.76 ( t, 2 H, J = 5.9), 2.62 - 2.60 (m, 4H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 1.70 - 1.40 ( m, 8 H); MS eI m/Z 488 (M+); CHN calcd for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>33</sub>FN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

5   **Example No. 131   2-(3-Methoxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole-5-ol**

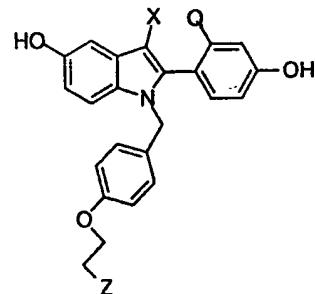
Mp = 120 - 123°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 8.76 (s, 1 H), 7.42 - 7.46 (t, 1 H,  $J$  = 7.9 Hz), 7.12 - 7.09 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.7 Hz), 6.99 - 6.92 (m, 2 H), 6.86 - 6.83 (m, 2 H), 6.76 (s, 4 H), 6.63 - 6.60 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.1 Hz,  $J$  = 6.5 Hz), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 3.96 - 3.92 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.9 Hz), 3.70 (s, 3 H), 2.59 - 2.55 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.9 Hz), 2.37 (s, 4 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.49 - 1.44 (m, 4 H), 1.35 - 1.34 (m, 2 H); IR 3400, 2950, 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 471 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$ .

10   **Example No. 132   3-Methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-trifluoromethoxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-5-ol**

Mp = 122 - 125°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 8.80 (s, 1 H), 7.51 - 7.45 (m, 4 H), 7.17 - 7.14 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.7 Hz), 6.85 - 6.84 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.0 Hz), 6.75 - 6.69 (m, 4 H), 6.66 - 6.62 (m, 1 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 3.95 - 3.92 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.8 Hz), 2.59 - 2.55 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 5.6 Hz), 2.49 - 2.38 (m, 4 H), 2.13 (s, 3 H), 1.47 - 1.44 (m, 4 H), 1.36 - 1.34 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 4.8 Hz); IR 3400, 2900, 1600  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 525 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{31}\text{F}_3\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 + 0.25 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

**Synthetic procedures and physical data for compounds substituted with chloro, ethyl or cyano groups at the 3-position of the indole**

25



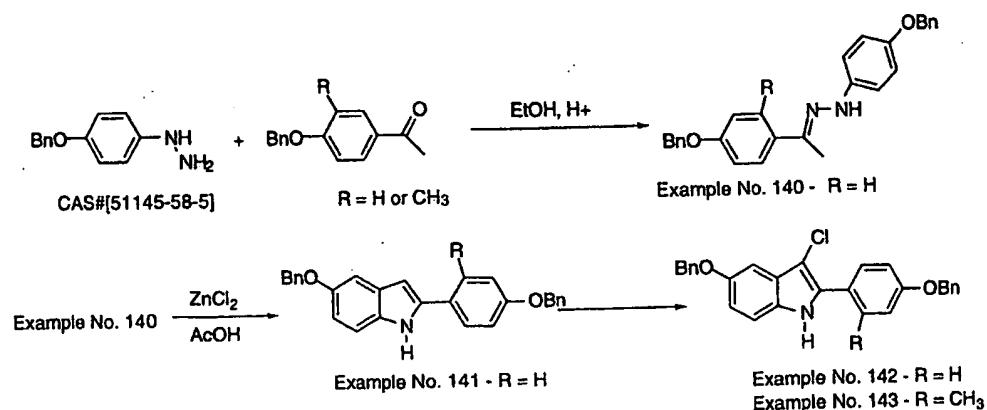
5

Table 8

Example No.	X	Q	Z
No. 133	Cl	H	
No. 134	Cl	H	
No. 135	Cl	H	
No. 136	Cl	CH <sub>3</sub>	
No. 137	Et	H	
No. 138	CN	H	
No. 139	CN	H	

Synthesis of 3-chloro analogues No. 133- No. 136

10

Scheme 14Synthesis of 3-chloroindole

5

**Example No. 140 Formation of hydrazone**

4-Benzylxyphenylhydrazine CAS No. [51145-58-5] (50.0 g, 233.4 mmol) was mixed with 4-benzylxyacetophenone CAS No. [54696-05-8] (63.0 g, 280.0 mmol) in 10 pure ethanol (800 mL). A catalytic amount of acetic acid (5 drops) was added. The reaction was heated to reflux for 2.5 hrs. During the course of refluxing, the condensed product solidified out of the hot solution. The reaction was cooled down to rt. The desired product was collected by vacuum filtration as a light yellow solid (85 g, 86%). Mp = 165-174°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 8.91 (s, 1 H), 7.68 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 15 7.48 - 7.32 (m, 10 H), 7.12 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 9 Hz), 7.00 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 6.88 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 9.0 Hz). 5.11 (s, 2 H), 5.01 (s, 2 H), 2.17 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 422 (M $^+$ ).

**Example No. 141 Formation of indole from hydrazone: 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

20

A flask was charged with N-(4-Benzylxy-phenyl)-N'-(1-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-ethyldene)-hydrazine (No. 140) (10.0 g, 23.7 mmol),  $\text{ZnCl}_2$  (8.06 g, 59.17 mmol), acetic acid (70 mL). The reaction flask was heated to 105 °C for no more than 20 min. During the heating period, the reaction was monitored carefully by TLC for the 25 disappearance of the starting material. The progress of the reaction could be shown as the product solidified out of the solution while heating. The reaction was then cooled to rt and more product crashed out was observed. The reaction content was poured into a separatory funnel containing ether (100 mL) and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (200 mL), which was shaken vigorously. The insoluble residue as the desired product stayed in the ether layer which 30 was collected by vacuum filtration. The product was further purified by trituration in ether to give a light gray solid (4.4 g, 46%)

Mp = 202 - 204°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 11.24 (s, 1 H), 7.73 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz), 7.48 - 7.41 (m, 4 H), 7.45 - 7.27 (m, 6 H), 7.25 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.6 Hz), 7.12 - 7.04 (m, 3 H), 6.77 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.4 Hz, 8.6 Hz), 6.65 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 1.5 Hz), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.08 (s, 2 H); IR 3420, 3000, 1625  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 405 (M $^+$ ); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{23}\text{NO}_2 + 0.40 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

5

**Example No. 142 Chlorination of indole to render 5-Benzylxy-3-chloro-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

A flask was charged with 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-1H-indole No. 141  
10 (8.0 g, 20.0 mmole) and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (50ml). The reaction was cooled to 0°C and n-chlorosuccinimide( 2.9g , 22mmole) was added . The reaction was stirred at 0°C for 20min. The reaction was then washed with 10% sodium sulfite solution,dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated. To the resulting brown solid was added MeOH and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. The solid was filtered to give 6.8g of a tan solid (78%).  
15 Mp = 157-160°C ; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.5 (s , 1 H), 7.80 (d , 2 H , J = 7.0 Hz), 7.42 - 7.28 (m , 11 H), 7.17 (d , 2 H , J = 8.7 Hz), 7.01 (d , 1 H , J = 2.2Hz), 6.88 (dd , 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.4 Hz), 5.17 (s , 2H), 5.13 (s , 2H); MS eI m/z 439 (M+).

**Example No. 143 5-Benzylxy-3-chloro-2-(2-methyl-4-benzylxy-phenyl)-1H-indole**

20 This indole synthesized analogously to indole No. 142 immediately preceding: Mp =  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 11.34 (s , 1 H), 7.48 - 7.44 (m , 4 H), 7.42 - 7.24 (m , 8 H), 7.02 (dd , 2 H , J = 9.3 Hz , J = 2.4 Hz), 6.95 (dd , 1 H , J = 8.4 Hz , J = 2.6Hz), 6.88 (dd , 1 H, J = 8.8Hz, J =2.4 Hz), 5.16 (s , 2 H), 5.14 (s , 2 H), 2.23 (s ,3 H); MS eI  
25 m/z 453 (M+).

**Example No. 144 Alkylation of indole to give {4-[5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-chloro-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

30 This procedure was performed analogously to that outlined for the synthesis of 3-methyl indole acetic acid ethyl esters outlined in method 3.  
Mp = 90-94°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d , 4H, J= 7.8 Hz),7.41 - 7.26 (m, 9H), 7.14 (d , 2 H , J = 8.7 Hz), 7.04 (d , 1 H , J = 2.4 Hz ), 6.91 (dd, 1 H, J = 9.0Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.80-6.74 (m, 4H), 5.24 (s , 2H), 5.15 (s , 2H), 5.14 (s , 2H), 4.66 (s , 2 H), 4.12 (q, 2H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.16 (t , 3H , J = 7.5 Hz); MS eI m/z 631(M+).

- 85 -

5

**Example No. 145 Reduction of No. 144 to render No. 145 2-[4-[5-  
Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-chloro-indol-1-ylmethyl]-  
phenoxy]-ethanol**

10 This reaction was performed analogously to that outlined for the synthesis of 3-methyl indoles outlined in method 4. Compound was not purified or characterized, but used as obtained for the next step.

15 **Example No. 146 Bromination of No. 145 to render Benzyloxy-2-(4-  
benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-chloro-1H-indole**

This reaction was performed analogously to that outlined for the synthesis of 3-methyl indoles outlined in method 5. Mp = 155-158°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 4 H, J= 7.8 Hz), 7.41 - 7.25 (m, 9H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.91 (dd, 1 H, J = 9.0Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4H), 5.24 (s, 2 H), 5.15 (s, 2H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 4.20 (t, 2 H, J= 5.3Hz), 3.74 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz); MS eI m/z 651 (M+).

25 **Example No. 147 Substitution of No. 146 with piperidine to render 5-  
Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-chloro-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-  
ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

This reaction performed analogously to that outlined for the synthesis of 3-methyl indoles outlined in method 6, using piperidine to substitute the bromide.

30 Mp 96-98°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 4 H, J= 7.8 Hz), 7.40 - 7.30 (m, 9 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.04 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.91 (dd, 1 H, J = 9.0Hz, J = 2.5 Hz), 6.74 (s, 4 H), 5.24 (s, 2H), 5.15 (s, 2 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 6.0 Hz), 2.56 (t, 2 H, J= 6.0 Hz), 2.41-2.32 (m, 4 H), 1.48-1.39 (m, 4 H), 1.38-1.31 (m, 2 H).

35

- 86 -

5   **Example No. 148 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-chloro-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Reaction performed the same as above except the substituting amine used was hexamethyleneamine.

10   Mp = 94-97°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.45 (d, 4H,  $J = 7.8$  Hz), 7.42 - 7.30 (m, 9H), 7.14 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.7$  Hz), 7.04 (d, 1H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.91 (dd, 1H,  $J = 9.0$  Hz,  $J = 2.5$  Hz), 6.74 (s, 4H), 5.24 (s, 2H), 5.15 (s, 2H), 5.14 (s, 2H), 3.93 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.0$  Hz), 2.75 (t, 2H,  $J = 6.0$  Hz), 2.63-2.59 (m, 4H), 1.58-1.44 (m, 8H); MS eI m/z 671 (M $^+$ ).

15   **Example No. 149 5-Benzylxy-2-(2-methyl-4-benzylxy-phenyl)-3-chloro-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Reactions to make this compound analogous to those used to make No. 147.

20   Oil;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR(DMSO) 7.50 - 7.29 (m, 11H), 7.17 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.05 (d, 1H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 7.02 (d, 1H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz), 6.93 - 6.85 (m, 2H), 6.75 - 6.65 (m, 4H), 5.14 (s, 2H), 5.13 (s, 2H), 5.07 (m, 2H), 3.92 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 2.55 (t, 2H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 2.42 - 2.29 (m, 4H), 1.94 (s, 3H), 1.44 - 1.40 (m, 4H), 1.38 - 1.34 (m, 2H).

25   **Example No. 133 3-Chloro-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-pyrrolidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Synthesized as described for example No. 134.

Mp = 233-235°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.50 (s, 1H), 9.88 (s, 1H), 9.01 (s, 1H), 7.30 - 7.20 (m, 3H), 6.90 - 6.80 (m, 7H), 6.68 (dd, 1H,  $J = 2.4$  Hz, 8.8 Hz), 5.20 (s, 2H), 4.22 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.47 (t, 2H,  $J = 4.8$  Hz), 3.10 (bm, 4H), 1.90 (s, 4H); IR (KBr) 3400, 1625, 1475, 825  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS eI m/z 462 (M $^+$ ); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{27}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_3 + 1 \text{ HCl} + .75 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ .

5   **Example No. 134 Removal of benzyl ethers to render 3-Chloro-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Benzyl ethers were removed analogously to that procedure outlined for 3-methyl indoles outlined in method 7. This compound was then converted to the hydrochloride salt as described previously in method 8; Mp = 207-209°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.10 (bs , 1 H), 9.86 (s , 1H), 9.07 (s , 1 H), 7.26 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.22 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.87 (d , 2 H , J = 8.6Hz), 6.81 - 6.78 (m , 5 H), 6.65 (dd , 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.2 Hz), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (t , 2H, J = 5.0Hz), 3.44 - 3.37 (m , 4 H), 3.00 - 2.85 (m , 2 H), 1.81-1.60 (m , 5H), 1.41 - 1.26 (m , 1 H); IR (KBr) 3350, 1470 15 ,1250 CM <sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 476 (M+); CHN calc for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>29</sub>ClN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + HCl + 1.5 H<sub>2</sub>O.

**Example No. 135 3-Chloro-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

20   Synthesized as described for No. 134.  
Mp = 196-198°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.10 (brs , 1 H), 9.86 (s , 1H), 9.07 (s , 1 H), 7.26 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.22 (d , 1 H, J = 9.0 Hz), 6.87 (d , 2 H , J = 8.6Hz), 6.84 - 6.78 (m , 5 H ), 6.65 (dd , 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, J = 2.2 Hz), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (t , 2H, J = 5.0Hz), 3.45-3.30 (m , 4 H), 3.21-3.10 (m , 2 H), 1.82-1.76 (m , 4 H), 25 1.65 - 1.46 (m , 4 H); MS eI m/z 491 (M+);  
CHN calc for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>31</sub>ClN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1 HCl + .37 H<sub>2</sub>O; IR (KBr) 3400 , 3200, 1450, 1125

**Example No. 136 3-Chloro-2-(4-hydroxy-2-methyl-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

30   Synthesized as described for No. 134 except the compound was not converted into a salt.  
Foam; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 9.64 (s , 1H), 9.01 (s , 1H), 7.25 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8Hz), 7.03 (d , 1 H , J = 8.1 Hz), 6.79 (d , 1 H , J= 2.4 Hz), 6.78 - 6.65 (m , 7 H), 5.06 - 4.92 (m , 2 H), 3.94 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.62 - 2.57 (m , 2 H) , 2.42 - 2.32 (m , 4 H) , 1.90 (s , 3 H), 1.48- 1.40 (m , 4 H), 1.40 - 1.32 (m , 2 H); MS eI m/z 490 (M+); IR (KBr) 3430, 2900 , 1450 cm<sup>-1</sup>; CHN calc for C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>31</sub>ClN<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1.0 H<sub>2</sub>O.

5 Synthesis of 3-ethylindole analogue No. 137

This compound was synthesized in exact analogy to the example given for 3-methylindoles, supra, using methods a and 2-8. The only difference is that the starting material used is 4'-(benzyloxy)-Butyrophenone CAS No. [26945-71-1] instead of 4'-(benzyloxy)-Propiophenone. Data for intermediates is as follows.

10 **Example No. 150 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-ethyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 101 - 108°C; MS eI m/z 433 (M+).

15 **Example No. 151 {4-[5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-ethyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**  
Mp = 72 - 75°C; MS eI m/z 625 (M+).

20 **Example No. 152 2-[4-[5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-ethyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy]-ethanol**  
Mp = 105 - 113 °C; MS eI m/z 583 (M+).

25 **Example No. 153 Benzyl-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-ethyl-1H-indole**  
Mp = 140°C (decomp.); MS eI m/z 647, 645 (M+, Br present).

30 **Example No. 154 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-ethyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**  
Mp = 92 - 96°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 4 H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.42 - 7.39 (m, 4 H), 7.36 - 7.30 (m, 2 H), 7.27 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.18 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 7.10 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.79 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 6.73 (s, 4 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 4 H), 3.93 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.62 - 2.53 (m, 4 H), 2.40 - 2.33 (m, 4 H), 1.49 - 1.42 (m, 4 H), 1.37 - 1.30 (m, 2 H), 1.10 (t, 3 H, J = 7.2 Hz); MS eI m/z 650 (M+H+).

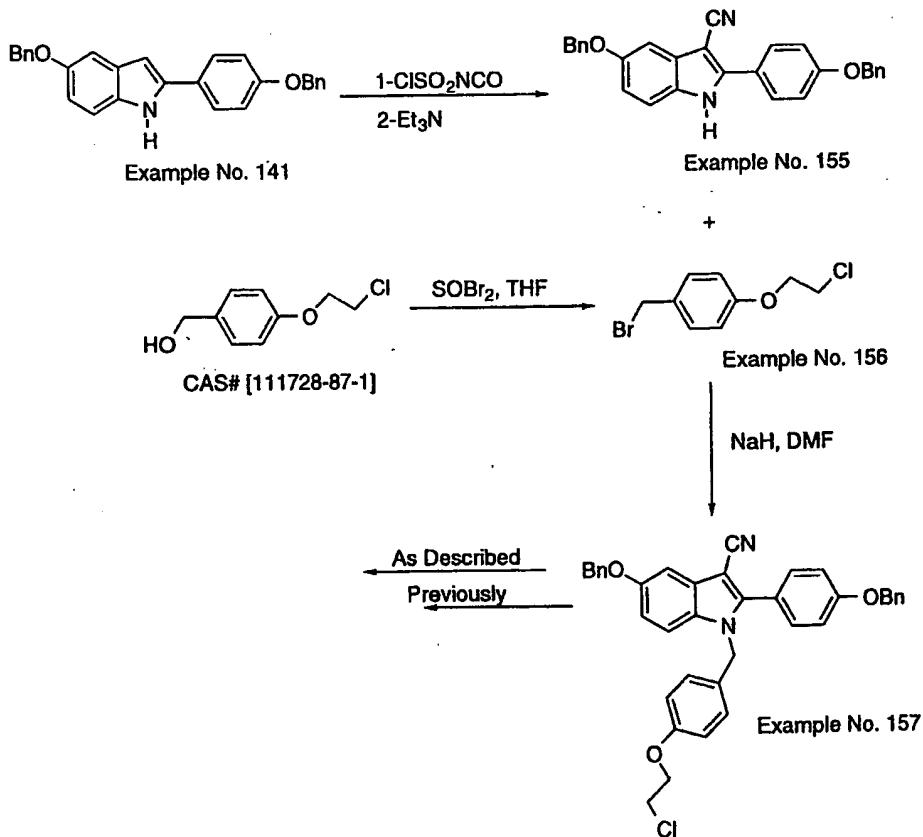
- 89 -

5 Example No. 137 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-ethyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)

Mp = 160 - 164°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.78 (br s, 1 H), 9.69 (s, 1 H), 8.69 (s, 1 H), 7.14 (d, 2 H,  $J$  = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.6 Hz), 6.87 - 6.78 (m, 7 H), 6.56 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.08 (s, 2 H), 4.25 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 4.4 Hz), 3.45 - 3.38 (m, 5 H), 3.00 - 2.86 (m, 2 H), 2.57 - 2.50 (m, 2 H), 1.83 - 1.59 (m, 5 H), 1.41 - 1.28 (m, 1 H), 1.10 (t, 2 H,  $J$  = 7.5 Hz); IR (KBr) 3400 br, 3200 br, 2920, 1610  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS ei  $m/z$  470 (M $^+$ ); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$  + HCl + 1.5  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

### Scheme 15

## Synthesis of 3-cyanoindole analogues



- 90 -

5    Example No. 155 5-Benzylxy-3-cyano-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-1H-indole

In a reaction flask 5-Benzylxy-2-(4-benzylxy-phenyl)-1H-indole No. 141 (5.90 g, 14.6 mmol) was mixed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (90 mL) was cooled down to 0°C (the 10 starting material did not completely dissolve in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>). While stirring vigorously, a solution of chlorosulfonyl isocyanate (2.26 g, 16.0 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (25 mL) was added dropwise over a period of 45 min. The reaction was run at 0°C for 2 hrs while detected by TLC for the formation of the insoluble N-chlorosulfonylamide intermediate. After this period, Et<sub>3</sub>N (1.47 g, 14.6 mL) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (25 mL) was added dropwise 15 over 45 min at 0°C. The insoluble residue became soluble in the reaction solvent as the Et<sub>3</sub>N addition was approaching completion. The reaction was let go for the additional 1 hr at 0°C and 2 hrs at rt. The progress of the reaction could be observed by the insoluble solid formation of the product as the reaction time went on. The solvent was stripped down and the solid residue purified by trituration with methanol to yield (4.0 20 g, 63.8 %). Mp = 238 - 242°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 12.31 (s, 1 H), 7.88 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.48 (d, 4 H, J = 7.25 Hz), 7.55 - 7.30 (m, 7 H), 7.23 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.97 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.2 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 5.20 (s, 2 H), 5.17 (s, 2 H); MS eI m/z 430 (M+).

25    Example No. 156 4-(2-Chloroethoxy)benzylbromide

To 4-(2-Chloroethoxy)benzylalcohol CAS No. [111728-87-1] (6.4 g, 34.31 mmol) in dioxane (100 mL) at 0°C was added slowly thionylbromide (7.13 g, 34.31 mmol). The reaction was run at 0°C after 5 min. The reaction mixture was diluted with 30 ether (200 mL) and washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (1x30 mL) then NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (2x25 mL), and brine (30 mL). The organic extract was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (15% EtOAc/Hex) to yield 5.0 g (58%) of the desired product. Mp = 64-66°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.37 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.93 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 4.68 (s, 2 H), 4.24 (t, 2 H, J = 5.05 Hz), 3.93 (t, 2 35 H, J = 5.27 Hz); MS eI m/z 248 (M+).

- 91 -

5   **Example No. 157   Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-chloro-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-cyano-1H-indole**

In a reaction flask the 3-cyano indole starting material No. 155 (2.86 g, 6.64 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (25 mL) at 0°C was added NaH (191.2 mg, 8 mmol) slowly. The reaction was stirred at 0°C for 20 min. In a separate reaction flask containing 4-(2-Chloroethoxy)benzylbromide No. 156 (1.81 g, 7.28 mmol) in DMF (15 mL) at 0°C, the above prepared indole anion solution taken up by syringe was added slowly. The reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 20 min and promoted to rt for 1 h. The reaction was quenched with a few drops of H<sub>2</sub>O. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (2x100 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (80 mL). The organic extract was washed with brine (80 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by trituration with ether to give the product as a white solid (2.80 g, 70.4%). Mp = 160-162°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.53 - 7.28 (m, 13 H), 7.23 (m, 3 H), 6.97 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 9.0 Hz), 6.86 - 6.78 (m, 4 H), 5.37 (s, 2 H), 5.18 (s, 4 H), 4.15 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.87 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz); MS eI m/z 598 (M+).

**Example No. 's 158 and 159**

Substitution of the chloro group with piperidine and hexamethyleneamine was performed analogously to the procedure outlined in method 6 using No. 157 as a starting material, *supra*.

**Example No. 158   5-Benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-cyano-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

30   Mp = 148 - 150 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.54 - 7.30 (m, 13 H), 7.25 - 7.18 (m, 3 H), 6.98 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 9.0 Hz), 6.84 - 6.74 (m, 4 H), 5.35 (s, 2 H), 5.17 (s, 4 H), 3.94 (t, 2 H, 5.9 Hz), 2.55 (t, 2 H, 5.7 Hz), 2.35 (bs, 4 H), 1.50 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.38 - 1.25 (m, 2 H); IR 3400, 2910, 2250, 1250 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS FAB 648 [M+H]+.

5   **Example No. 159   5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-cyano-1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

10   <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 8.60 (br s, 1 H), 7.60 - 7.28 (m, 12 H), 7.25 - 7.16 (m, 3 H),  
 6.97 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 9.0 Hz), 6.88 - 6.75 (m, 4 H), 5.35 (s, 2 H), 5.17 (s, 4  
 H), 3.92 (t, 2 H, J = 6.2 Hz), 3.08-3.00 (m, 2 H), 2.77 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 2.63  
 (t, 4 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 1.78 - 1.68 (m, 2 H), 1.60 - 1.40 (m, 4 H); MS eI m/z 661 (M+).

**Examples No. 138 and No. 139**

Benzyl ethers were removed by hydrogen transfer using 1,4 cyclohexadiene and 10%  
 15   Pd/C as described in method 7. Compounds were converted into their respective  
 hydrochloride salts as described in method 8.

**Example No. 138   5-Hydroxy-2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole-3-carbonitrile (HCl)**

20   Mp = 173 - 175°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.40 (s, 1 H), 10.12 (s, 1 H), 9.40 (s, 1 H),  
 7.38 (m, 2 H), 7.30 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.02 - 6.90 (m, 3 H), 6.88 (s, 4 H), 6.75  
 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 9Hz), 5.33 (s, 2 H), 4.30 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.51 - 3.38  
 (m, 4 H), 2.92 (m, 2 H), 1.85 - 1.73 (m, 4 H), 1.68 - 1.59 (m, 1 H), 1.26 - 1.21  
 (m, 1 H); IR 3400, 2200, 1250 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 467 (M+); CHN calcd for  
 25   C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>29</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1.0 HCl + 1.0 H<sub>2</sub>O.

**Example No. 139   1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-5-hydroxy-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1H-indole-3-carbonitrile (HCl)**

Mp = 160 - 163°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 10.22 (s, 1 H), 10.08 (s, 1 H), 9.35 (s, 1 H),  
 30   7.40 - 7.37 (m, 2 H), 7.30 (d, 1 H, 8.8 Hz), 7.0 - 6.90 (m, 3 H), 6.87 (s, 4 H), 6.74  
 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.41 Hz, 9 Hz), 5.33 (s, 2 H), 4.27 (t, 2 H, J = 5.0 Hz), 3.50 - 3.30  
 (m, 4 H), 3.20 (m, 2 H), 1.85 - 1.70 (m, 4 H), 1.65 - 1.50 (m, 4 H); IR 3300, 2200,  
 1250 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS eI m/z 481 (M+); CHN calc for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>31</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + 1 HCl + 1 H<sub>2</sub>O.

- 93 -

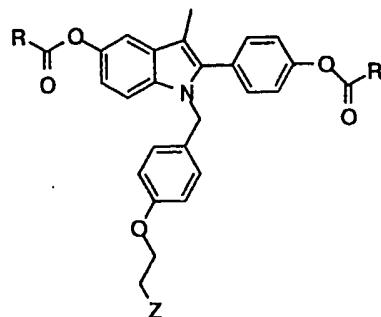
5 Esters of Indole No. 's 97 and 98

Table 9

Example No.	R	Z
No. 160	Et	
No. 161	t-Bu	
No. 162	t-Bu	

10

Method 9Example No. 162 Di-pivalate ester of 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol

15 Example No. 97 free base was used as the starting material for this synthesis. No. 97 (1.0 g, 2.5 mmol) in 20 mL  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  was treated with diisopropylethylamine (0.7 g, 6.3 mmol) and catalytic DMAP. The reaction was cooled to 0°C and treated with pivaloyl chloride (0.7 mL, 5.6 mmol) and allowed to come to rt and stirred overnight. The reaction was worked up by diluting with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and washing with water and brine. After drying over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  the solution was concentrated and chromatographed on silica gel ( $\text{MeOH}/\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , 1:19) to yield the desired material as an orange foam (1.08 g). This material was then taken up in 15 mL ethyl acetate and treated with 2.5 mL of a 1M  $\text{HCl}/\text{Et}_2\text{O}$  solution. Hexane was added until the solution turned cloudy. The product precipitated out as the  $\text{HCl}$  salt. This material was recrystallized from ethyl

20

- 94 -

5 acetate/hexane to yield 0.42 g of pure No. 162: Mp = 182 - 185°C; CHN calcd for C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>48</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> + HCl + 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O.

**Example No. 160 Di-propionate of 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

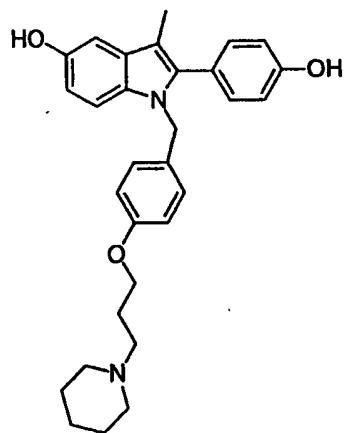
10 Compound was prepared analogously to example No. 162 except the starting material used was example No. 98 and the acylating agent used was propionyl chloride: Mp = 170.5 - 172°C; CHN calcd for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>42</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> + HCl + 0.75 H<sub>2</sub>O; MS FAB 605 (M+Na)+.

15 **Example No. 161 Di-pivalate of 1-[4-(2-Azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol (HCl)**

Compound was prepared analogously to example No. 162 except the starting material used was example No. 98: Mp = 143 - 151°C; CHN calcd for C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>50</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> + HCl + 0.75 H<sub>2</sub>O.

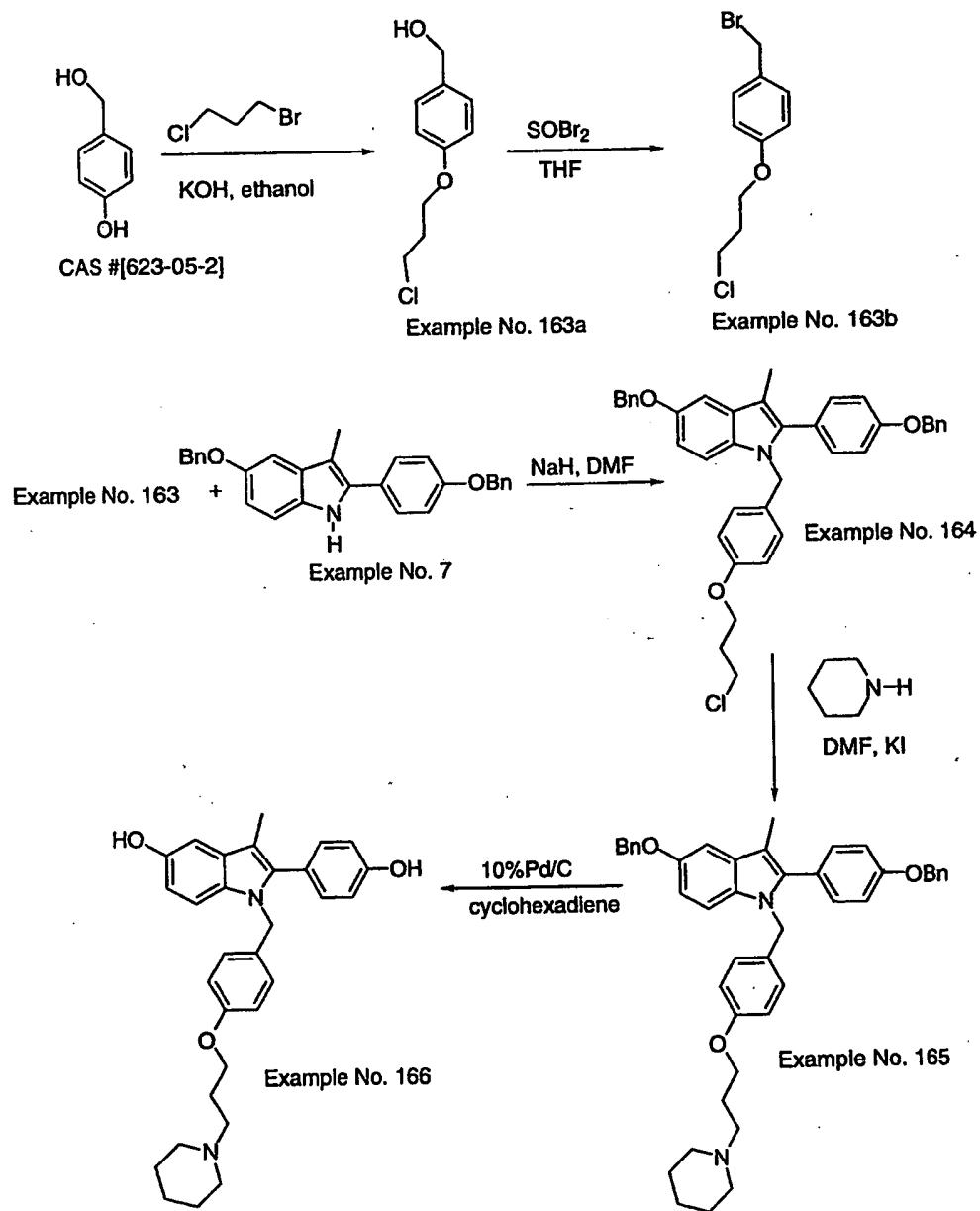
20

**Experimental for example No. 166**



- 95 -

5 **Scheme 16**  
**Synthesis of No. 166**



5

**EXAMPLE No. 166****2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[3-(piperidin-1-yl)-propoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

10 The title compound was prepared according to Scheme 16 and the steps provided below:

**Method 11****Example No. 163a 4-(3-chloropropoxy)-benzyl alcohol**

15 A solution of 4-hydroxy benzyl alcohol CAS No. [623-05-2] (10g, 80.5 mmol) in ethanol (70 mL) was treated with 1, 3 bromochloro propane (16.0g, 100 mmol) and potassium hydroxide (5.0 g, 89 mmol) was refluxed for 2 hours. The solution was cooled and filtered and then the filtrate concentrated. The concentrate was taken up in ether and washed with water, brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. The 20 material was chromatographed on silica gel using ethyl acetate/hexanes (3:7) to yield 11.6 g of the product as a white solid: Mp = 65°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.21 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.88 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.03 (t, 1 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 4.40 (d, 2H, J = 5.5 Hz), 4.05 (t, 2 H, J = 6.1 Hz), 3.77 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz); MS eI m/z 200.

**25 Method 12****Example No. 163b 4-(3-chloropropoxy)-benzyl bromide**

30 A solution consisting of 4-(3-chloropropoxy)-benzyl alcohol No. 162 (10.6 g, 52.8 mmol) in dioxane (0.125 l) was cooled to 0° C and treated with a dropwise addition of thionyl bromide (12.0 g, 58.0 mmol). After 10 minutes the reaction was complete. The dioxane was diluted with ethyl ether and washed with water, brine, and then dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The material was concentrated down to yield 15 g of an oil: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.36 (d, 2 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.92 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 4.68 (s, 2 H), 4.08 (t, 2 H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.77 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz); MS (FAB) 266 (M+H<sup>+</sup>).

5    **Method 13**Example No. 164    5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-1-[4-(3-chloro-propoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole

A solution consisting of 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole No. 7 (6.5 g, 15.5 mmol) in DMF (60 mL) was cooled to 0°C and treated with addition of sodium hydride (0.68 g, 17.0 mmol) and stirred for 20 minutes. A solution of 4-(3-chloropropoxy)-benzyl bromide No. 163 in DMF (10 mL) was then added slowly. The reaction was allowed to come to rt and stirred for 2 hours. The reaction was poured into water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with water, brine and dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The concentrate was treated with methanol and 5 g of the desired product precipitated as a white solid with a melting point of 130-132°C.

## Method 14

20    Example No. 165    5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-1-[4-(3-piperidin-1-yl-propoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole

A solution of 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-1-[4-(3-chloro-propoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole No. 164 (3g, 5.1 mmol), potassium iodide (2.5 g, 15.3 mmol) and piperidine (3.0 mL, 30.6 mmol) were heated in DMF (30 mL) at 100°C for 18 hours. The reaction was worked up by pouring into water and extracting with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water, brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solution was concentrated to an oil and the product precipitated out by adding methanol. The product was obtained as a white solid: Mp = 104-106°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) 7.47 (d, 4 H, J = 7.5 Hz), 7.38 (q, 4 H, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.36-7.30 (m, 1 H), 7.28 (d, 2 H, J = 8.3 Hz), 7.19 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.12-7.10 (m, 4 H), 6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.8, 2.0 Hz), 6.72 (s, 4 H), 5.14 (s, 2 H), 5.13 (s, 2 H), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 3.86 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz), 2.35-2.20 (m, 6 H), 2.14 (s, 3 H), 1.78-1.75 (m, 2 H), 1.47-1.42 (m, 4 H), 1.40-1.31 (m, 2 H); MS eI m/z 650.

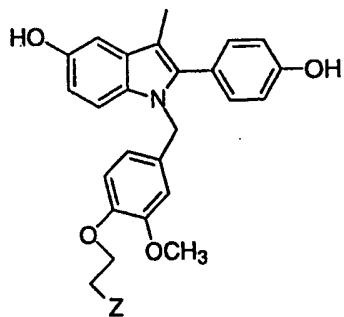
- 98 -

5    **Method 15**

**Example No. 166    2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-[3-(piperidin-1-yl)-propoxy]-benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol**

A solution of 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-1-[4-(3-piperidin-1-yl)-propoxy]-benzyl-3-methyl-1H-indole No. 165 (2.35 g) in tetrahydrofuran (25 mL) and ethanol (25 mL) was added to 2.3 g of 10% palladium on carbon. Cyclohexadiene (10 mL) was added and the reaction allowed to stir at room temperature for 18 hours. The catalyst was filtered through celite and the reaction mixture was concentrated and chromatographed on silica gel using dichloromethane/methanol (4:1) to elute the product (0.8 g) as a white foam: Mp = 125-130°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR 9.68 (s, 1 H), 8.70 (s, 1 H), 7.15 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.05 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.85 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.80 (d, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz), 6.74 (d, 4 H, J = 2.6 Hz), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 8.6, 2.2 Hz), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.88 (t, 2 H, J = 6.4 Hz), 3.60-3.15 (m, 2 H), 2.62-2.38 (m, 4 H), 2.09 (s, 3 H), 1.92-1.78 (m, 2 H), 1.55-1.43 (m, 4 H), 1.42-1.30 (m, 2 H); IR (KBr) 3400 (br), 2900, 1620, 1515 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS el m/z 470.

**Synthesis of No. 167 and No. 168**



- 99 -

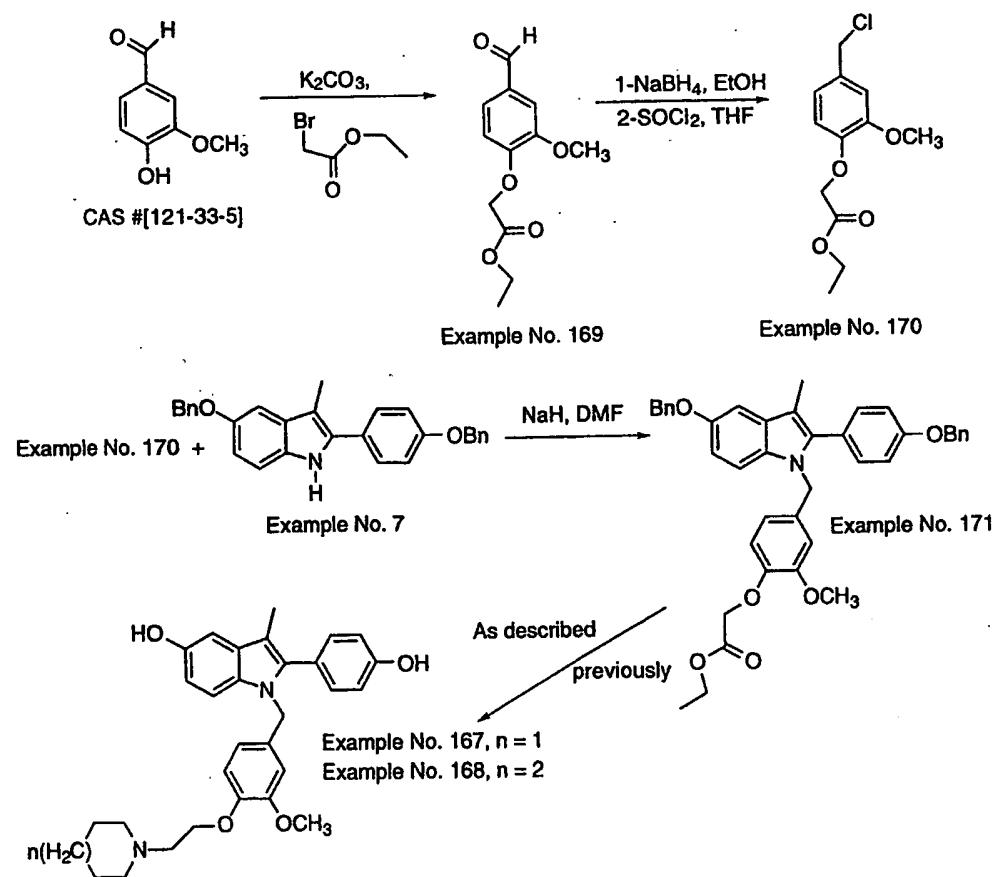
5

Table 10

Example No.	Z
No. 167	
No. 168	

Scheme 17

10

Synthetic scheme for examples No. 167 and No. 168

- 100 -

5

Synthesis of example No. 167

2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol

10 Example No. 169 (4-Formyl-2-methoxy-phenoxy)-acetic acid ethyl ester

A flask containing vanillin (20g, 0.13 mol), ethyl bromoacetate (28.4g, 0.17 mol) and potassium carbonate (32.7 g, 0.24 mol) and acetone 200 mL were heated to reflux for 3 hours. The reaction was allowed to come to rt. The acetone was stripped off and the residue partitioned between water and ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate was washed with brine and dried over magnesium sulfate. The organic layer was concentrated and the solid triturated with hexanes to yield 28.4 grams of example No. 169.

15 Mp = 56 - 59 °C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 9.83 (s, 1 H), 7.50 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.0 Hz, 8.3 Hz), 7.42 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 1.7 Hz), 7.07 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 8.4 Hz), 4.91 (s, 2 H), 4.16 (q, 2 H,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz), 3.84 (s, 3 H), 1.20 (t, 3 H,  $J$  = 7.1 Hz); MS ei m/z 238 (M+);  
20 CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{14}\text{O}_5$ .

Example No. 170 (4-Chloromethyl-2-methoxy-phenoxy)-acetic acid ethyl ester

25 A solution of example No. 169 (28.8g, 0.119 mol) in 600 mL of EtOH/THF(1:1) was treated with sodium borohydride (2.25 g, 0.06 mol) at 0°C and stirred for 45 minutes. The solvents were evaporated and the reaction mixture diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with 1N HCl solution. The product thus obtained (14.2 g, 0.059 mol) as an oil was dissolved in 140 mL of THF and cooled to 0°C. This solution was then treated with dropwise addition of thionyl chloride (7.38g, 0.062 mol) at 0°C. After 1 hour the 30 reaction was poured into 400 mL of water and extracted with ether. The ether layer was washed with a sodium bicarbonate solution and dried over magnesium sulfate. This was concentrated and chromatographed by silica gel chromatography using ethyl acetate/hexanes (1:9). The product was obtained as 10.5 g of a white solid. Mp = 64 - 66°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.06 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.0 Hz), 6.91 (dd, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.0 Hz, 2.2 Hz), 6.83 (d, 1 H,  $J$  = 2.1 Hz), 4.75 (s, 2 H), 4.70 (s, 2 H), 4.13 (q, 2 H,  $J$  = 7.2 Hz), 3.77 (s, 3 H), 1.19 (t, 3 H,  $J$  = 7.1 Hz); MS ei m/z 258 (M+); CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{15}\text{ClO}_4$ .

5   **Example No. 171 2-Methoxy-4-[5-benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid ethyl ester**

Alkylation of the indole No. 7 was performed as described previously in Method No. 3 using example No. 170 as the electrophile.  
Mp = 120 - 123°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.20 (m, 13 H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 3 H),  
10   6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.52  
(d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz), 6.24 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.9 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.13 (s, 4 H), 5.10  
(s, 2 H), 4.61 (s, 2 H), 4.10 (q, 2 H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.58 (s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H), 1.15  
(t, 3 H, J = 7.0 Hz); MS eI m/z 641 (M+).

15   **Example No. 172 2-[2-Methoxy-4-[5-benzyloxy-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-phenoxy}-ethanol**

Reduction of the ester No. 171 was performed as described previously in Method 4.  
Mp = 86 - 90°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.20 (m, 13 H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80  
(dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.52 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz),  
20   6.24 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.9 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.13 (s, 4 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 4.76  
(t, 1 H, J = 5.5 Hz), 3.83 (t, 2 H, J = 5.1 Hz), 3.63 (q, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.56  
(s, 3 H), 2.15 (s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 599 (M+).

25   **Example No. 173 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-bromo-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indole**

Conversion of the alcohol of example No. 172 to the bromide was performed analogously to that described in Method 5.

Mp = 150 - 152°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.20 (m, 13 H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 3 H),  
6.80 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.52  
30   (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz), 6.24 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.9 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.13 (s, 4 H), 5.10  
(s, 2 H), 4.15 (t, 2 H, J = 5.3 Hz), 3.70 (t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.58 (s, 3 H), 2.15  
(s, 3 H); MS eI m/z 661 (M+).

35   **Example No. 174 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyloxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[3-Methoxy-4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Substitution of the bromide with piperidine was performed as described previously in Method 6.

$^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.20 (m, 13 H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80

5 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.52 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz),  
6.24 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.9 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.13 (s, 4 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.90  
(t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.55 (s, 3 H), 2.62 - 2.50 (bs, 2 H), 2.45 - 2.30 (bs, 4 H), 2.15  
(s, 3 H), 1.50 - 1.40 (m, 4 H), 1.40 - 1.35 (m, 2 H); MS FAB m/z 667 (M+H+).

10 **Example No. 175 5-Benzyl-2-(4-benzyl-phenyl)-3-methyl-1-[2-Methoxy-4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indole**

Reaction performed exactly as for No. 174 except hexamethyleneamine was used to displace the bromide in place of piperidine.

Foam;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 7.48 - 7.20 (m, 13 H), 7.18 - 7.10 (m, 3 H), 6.80

15 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.5 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.64 (d, 1 H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.52 (d, 1 H, J = 2.0 Hz),  
6.24 (dd, 1 H, J = 1.9 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.13 (s, 4 H), 5.10 (s, 2 H), 3.90  
(t, 2 H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.55 (s, 3 H), 2.85 - 2.70 (bs, 2 H), 2.70 - 2.55 (s, 4 H), 2.10  
(s, 3 H), 1.60 - 1.15 (m, 8 H); MS FAB m/z 681 (M+H+)

20 **Example No. 167 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Compound No. 173 was hydrogenated by transfer hydrogenation as described previously in Method 7. Compound was isolated as the hydrochloride salt by dissolving in ether and treating with 1.2 equivalents of 1N ether/HCl solution (this is a

25 variation of method 8).

Mp = 123 - 127 °C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.20 (bs, 1 H), 9.72 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H),  
7.17 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.87 (d, 2 H, J = 8.6 Hz), 6.79  
(m, 2 H), 6.57 (dd, 1 H, J = 2.4 Hz, 8.8 Hz), 6.55 (d, 1 H, J = 1.7 Hz), 6.33  
(dd, 1 H, J = 1.7 Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.23 (t, 2 H, J = 4.8 Hz), 3.60 (s, 3 H),

30 3.45 (m, 2 H), 3.35 (m, 2 H), 2.95 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.70 (m, 5 H), 1.35  
(m, 1 H); IR 3500, 1500, 1275  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (+) FAB m/z 487 (M+H) $^+$ ; CHN calcd for  
 $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4 + 1 \text{ HCl} + 1.0 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ .

35 **Example No. 168 2-(4-Hydroxy-phenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol**

Prepared in the same way as that described for example No. 167.

5       $M_p = 142 - 146^{\circ}\text{C}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO) 10.36 (s, 1 H), 9.72 (s, 1 H), 8.71 (s, 1 H),  
7.18 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.3$  Hz), 7.11 (d, 1 H,  $J = 8.6$  Hz), 6.87 (d, 2 H,  $J = 8.3$  Hz), 6.82  
(d, 1 H,  $J = 8.1$  Hz), 6.79 (d, 1 H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz), 6.57 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 8.6 Hz),  
6.55 (d, 1 H,  $J = 1.8$  Hz), 6.33 (dd, 1 H,  $J = 1.5$  Hz, 8.1 Hz), 5.11 (s, 2 H), 4.24 (t,  
2 H,  $J = 4.6$  Hz), 3.60 (s, 3 H), 3.40 (m, 4 H), 3.20 (m, 2 H), 2.10 (s, 3 H), 1.75  
10     (m, 4 H), 1.55 (m, 4 H); IR (KBr) 3300, 1500, 1270, 1200  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS (+) FAB m/z  
501 ( $M+\text{H}$ )<sup>+</sup>; CHN calcd for  $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4 + 1.0 \text{ HCl} + 0.12 \text{ CH}_3\text{OH}$ .

### Biological Data

15     **Method 16**

*In vitro* estrogen receptor binding assay

Receptor preparation

20      CHO cells overexpressing the estrogen receptor were grown in 150  $\text{mm}^2$  dishes  
in DMEM + 10% dextran coated charcoal, stripped fetal bovine serum. The plates were  
washed twice with PBS and once with 10mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.4, 1mM EDTA. Cells  
were harvested by scraping the surface and then the cell suspension was placed on ice.  
Cells were disrupted with a hand-held motorized tissue grinder using two, 10-second  
25     bursts. The crude preparation was centrifuged at 12,000g for 20 minutes followed by a  
60 minute spin at 100,000g to produce a ribosome free cytosol. The cytosol was then  
frozen and stored at -80°C. Protein concentration of the cytosol was estimated using  
the BCA assay with reference standard protein.

30     **Binding assay conditions**

The competition assay was performed in a 96-well plate (polystyrene\*) which  
binds <2.0% of the total input [ $^3\text{H}$ ]-17 $\beta$ -estradiol and each data point was gathered in  
triplicate. 100uG/100uL of the receptor preparation was aliquoted per well. A  
35     saturating dose of 2.5 nM [ $^3\text{H}$ ]17 $\beta$ -estradiol + competitor (or buffer) in a 50 uL volume  
was added in the preliminary competition when 100x and 500x competitor were  
evaluated, only 0.8 nM [ $^3\text{H}$ ] 17 $\beta$ -estradiol was used. The plate was incubated at room

5 temperature for 2.5 h. At the end of this incubation period 150 uL of ice-cold dextran  
coated charcoal (5% activated charcoal coated with 0.05% 69K dextran) was added to  
each well and the plate was immediately centrifuged at 99g for 5 minutes at 4°C. 200  
uL of the supernatant solution was then removed for scintillation counting. Samples  
were counted to 2% or 10 minutes, whichever occurs first. Because polystyrene  
10 absorbs a small amount of [<sup>3</sup>H]17 $\beta$ -estradiol, wells containing radioactivity and  
cytosol, but not processed with charcoal were included to quantitate amounts of  
available isotope. Also, wells containing radioactivity but no cytosol were processed  
with charcoal to estimate unremovable DPM of [<sup>3</sup>H] 17 $\beta$ -estradiol. Corning No.  
25880-96, 96-well plates were used because they have proven to bind the least amount  
15 of estradiol.

#### Analysis of results

Counts per minute (CPM) of radioactivity were automatically converted to  
20 disintegrated per minute (DPM) by the Beckman LS 7500 Scintillation Counter using a  
set of quenched standards to generate a H No. for each sample. To calculate the % of  
estradiol binding in the presence of 100 or fold 500 fold competitor the following  
formula was applied:

25 
$$((\text{DPM sample-DPM not removed by charcoal}) / (\text{DPM estradiol-DPM not removed by charcoal})) \times 100\% = \% \text{ of estradiol binding}$$

For the generation of IC<sub>50</sub> curves, % binding is plotted vs compound. IC<sub>50</sub>'s  
are generated for compounds that show >30% competition at 500x competitor  
30 concentration. For a description of these methods, see Hulme, E.C., ed. 1992.  
Receptor-Ligand Interactions: A Practical Approach. IRL Press, New York.(see  
especially chapter 8).

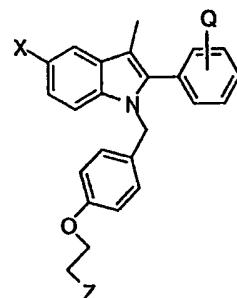
- 105 -

5

Table 11

## Estrogen Receptor Binding

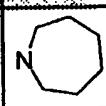
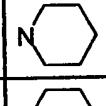
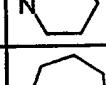
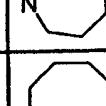
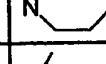
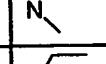
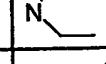
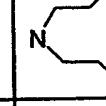
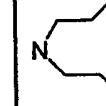
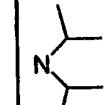
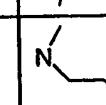
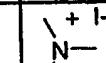
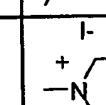
10



<u>Example No.</u>	<u>X</u>	<u>Q</u>	<u>Z</u>	<u>Receptor Binding IC50's uM</u>
No. 85	H	H	N	0.45
No. 86	H	4'-OH	N	0.12
No. 87	OH	H	N	0.030
No. 88	OMe	4'-OH	N	0.35
No. 89	OH	4'-OMe	N	0.30
No. 90	OMe	4'-OMe	N	0.60
No. 91	OMe	4'-OMe	N	0.52
No. 92	OH	4'-OEt	N	0.062

- 106 -

5 Table 11 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC <sub>50</sub> 's nM
No. 93	OH	4'-OEt		0.090
No. 94	F	4'-OH		0.20
No. 97	OH	4'-OH		0.060
No. 98	OH	4'-OH		0.050
No. 99	OH	4'-OH		0.03
No. 100	OH	4'-OH		0.06
No. 101	OH	4'-OH		0.04
No. 102	OH	4'-OH		0.08
No. 103	OH	4'-OH		0.2
No. 104	OH	4'-OH		0.1
No. 105	OH	4'-OH		0.028
No. 106	OH	4'-OH		0.1
No. 107	OH	4'-OH		0.06

5

Table 11 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC50's $\mu$ M
No. 108	OH	4'-OH		0.02
No. 109	OH	4'-OH		0.17
No. 110	OH	4'-OH		0.037
No. 111	OH	4'-OH		0.15
No. 112	OH	4'-OH		0.07
No. 113	OH	4'-OH		0.047
No. 114	OH	4'-OH		0.001
No. 115	OH	4'-OH		0.15
No. 116	OH	4'-Fl		0.04
No. 117	OH	4'-Fl		0.10
No. 118	OH	3'-OMe,4'-OH		N/A
No. 119	OH	3',4'-OCH2O-		0.070

- 108 -

5

Table 11 (Cont'd)

Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC <sub>50</sub> 's uM
No. 120	OH	4'-O-iPr		0.10
No. 121	OH	4'-O-iPr		0.080
No. 122	OH	4'-O-Cp		0.080
No. 123	OH	4'-CF <sub>3</sub>		0.17
No. 124	OH	4'-CH <sub>3</sub>		0.11
No. 125	OH	4'-Cl		0.11
No. 126	OH	2',4',-Dimethoxy		N/A
No. 127	OH	3'-OH		0.019
No. 128	OH	3'-OH		0.009
No. 129	OH	4'-OH,3'-Fl		0.0055
No. 130	OH	4'-OH, 3'-Fl		0.013
No. 131	OH	3'-OMe		0.12
No. 132	OH	4'-OCF <sub>3</sub>		0.05

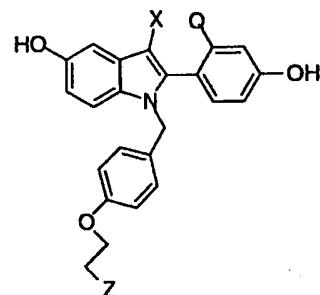
- 109 -

5

Table 12

## Estrogen Receptor Binding

10



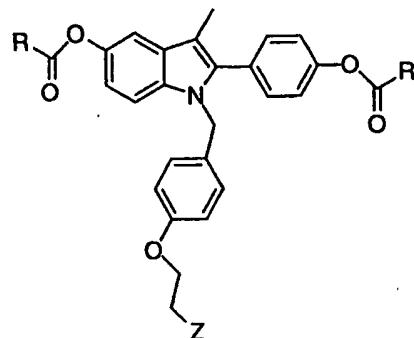
Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC50's uM
No. 133	Cl	H		0.004
No. 134	Cl	H		0.024
No. 135	Cl	H		0.029
No. 136	Cl	CH <sub>3</sub>		0.013
No. 137	Et	H		0.15
No. 138	CN	H		0.011
No. 139	CN	H		0.023

- 110 -

5

Table 13

## Estrogen Receptor Binding

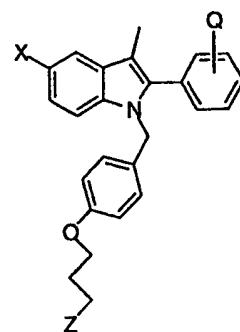


10

Example No.	R	Z	Receptor Binding IC50's uM
No. 160	Et		N/A
No. 161	t-Bu		N/A
No. 162	t-Bu		Does not Bind

Table 14

## 15 Estrogen Receptor Binding



20

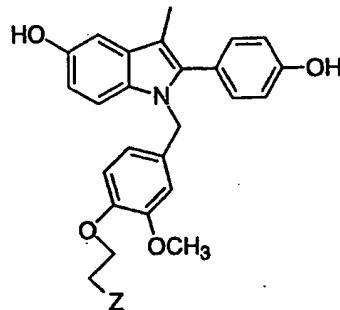
- 111 -

Example No.	X	Q	Z	Receptor Binding IC50's (nM)
No. 166	OH	4'-OH	N 	0.099

Table 15

## Estrogen Receptor Binding

10



Example No.	Z	Receptor Binding IC50's $\mu$ M
No. 167		0.08
No. 168		0.057

15

### Method 17

### Ishikawa Cell Alkaline Phosphatase Assay

20

### **Cell Maintenance and Treatment:**

Ishikawa cells were maintained in DMEM/F12 (50%:50%) containing phenol red + 10% fetal bovine serum and the medium was supplemented with 2 mM Glutamax, 1% Pen/Strap and 1 mM sodium pyruvate. Five days prior to the beginning of each experiment (treatment of cells) the medium was changed to phenol red-free

- 112 -

5      DMEM/F12 + 10% dextran coated charcoal stripped serum. On the day before treatment, cells were harvested using 0.5% trypsin/EDTA and plated at a density of 5 X 10<sup>4</sup> cells/well in 96-well tissue culture plates. Test compounds were dosed at 10<sup>-6</sup>, 10<sup>-7</sup> and 10<sup>-8</sup> M in addition to 10<sup>-6</sup> M (compound) + 10<sup>-9</sup> M 17 $\beta$ -estradiol to evaluate the ability of the compounds to function as antiestrogens. Cells were treated for 48 h prior  
10     to assay. Each 96-well plate contained a 17 $\beta$ -estradiol control. Sample population for at each dose was n=8.

**Alkaline Phosphatase Assay:**

15      At the end of 48h the media is aspirated and cells are washed three times with phosphate buffered saline (PBS). 50 $\mu$ L of lysis buffer (0.1 M Tris-HCl, pH 9.8, 0.2% Triton X-100) is added to each well. Plates are placed at -80°C for a minimum of 15 minutes. Plates are thawed at 37°C followed by the addition of 150 $\mu$ L of 0.1 M Tris-HCl, pH 9.8, containing 4 mM para-nitrophenylphosphate (pNPP) to each well  
20     (final concentration, 3 mM pNPP).

25      Absorbance and slope calculations were made using the KineticCalc Application program (Bio-Tek Instruments, Inc., Winooski, VT). Results are expressed as the mean +/- S.D. of the rate of enzyme reaction (slope) averaged over the linear portion of the kinetic reaction curve (optical density readings every 5 minutes for 30 minutes absorbance reading). Results for compounds are summarized as percent of response related to 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol.

30      Various compounds were assayed for estrogenic activity by the alkaline phosphatase method and corresponding ED50 values (95% C.I.) were calculated. The four listed in the following were used as reference standards:

	17 $\beta$ -estradiol	0.03 nM
	17 $\alpha$ -estradiol	1.42 nM
35	estriol	0.13 nM
	estrone	0.36 nM

- 113 -

5        A description of these methods is described by Holinka, C.F., Hata, H.,  
Kuramoto, H. and Gorpide, E. (1986) Effects of steroid hormones and antisteroids on  
alkaline phosphatase activity in human endometrial cancer cells (Ishikawa Line).  
Cancer Research, 46:2771-2774, and by Littlefield, B.A., Gorpide, E., Markiewicz,  
L., McKinley, B. and Hochberg, R.B. (1990) A simple and sensitive microtiter plate  
10      estrogen bioassay based on stimulation alkaline phosphatase in Ishikawa cells;  
Estrogen action of D5 adrenal steroids. Endocrinology, 6:2757-2762.

**Ishikawa Alkaline Phosphatase Assay**

15	<u>Compound</u>	<u>% Activation</u>
	17 $\beta$ -estradiol	100% activity
	tamoxifen	0% activity (45% with 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol)
	raloxifene	5% activity (5% with 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol)
	Example No. 98	1% activity (1% with 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol)

20      **Method No. 18**

**2X VIT ERE Infection Assay**

25      **Cell Maintenance and Treatment**

Chinese Hamster Ovary cells (CHO) which had been stably transfected with the  
human estrogen receptor were maintained in DMEM + 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS).  
48h prior to treatment the growth medium was replaced with DMEM lacking phenol red  
30      + 10% dextran coated charcoal stripped FBS (treatment medium). Cells were plated at  
a density of 5000 cells/well in 96-well plates containing 200  $\mu$ L of medium/well.

**Calcium Phosphate Transfection**

35      Reporter DNA (Promega plasmid pGL2 containing two tandem copies of the  
vitellogenin ERE in front of the minimal thymidine kinase promoter driving the  
luciferase gene) was combined with the B-galactosidase expression plasmid pCH110  
(Pharmacia) and carrier DNA (pTZ18U) in the following ratio:

5

10uG of reporter DNA  
5uG of pCH110DNA  
5 uG of pTZ18U  
20 uG of DNA/1 mL of transfection solution

10

The DNA (20uG) was dissolved in 500 uL of 250 mM sterile  $\text{CaCl}_2$  and added dropwise to 500 uL of 2 X HeBS (0.28 M NaCl, 50 mM HEPES, 1.5 mM  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$ , pH 7.05) and incubated at room temperature for 20 minutes. 20 uL of this mixture was added to each well of cells and remained on the cells for 16 h. At the end of this incubation the precipitate was removed, the cells were washed with media, fresh treatment media was replaced and the cells were treated with either vehicle, 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol, 1uM compound or 1 uM compound + 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol (tests for estrogen antagonism). Each treatment condition was performed on 8 wells (n=8) which were incubated for 24 h prior to the luciferase assay.

15

#### Luciferase Assay

20 After 24h exposure to compounds, the media was removed and each well washed with 2 X with 125 uL of PBS lacking  $\text{Mg}^{++}$  and  $\text{Ca}^{++}$ . After removing the PBS, 25 uL of Promega lysis buffer was added to each well and allowed to stand at room temperature for 15 min, followed by 15 min at -80°C and 15 min at 37°C. 20 uL of lysate was transferred to an opaque 96 well plate for luciferase activity evaluation and the remaining lysate (5 uL) was used for the B-galactosidase activity evaluation (normalize transfection). The luciferan substrate (Promega) was added in 100 uL aliquots to each well automatically by the luminometer and the light produced (relative light units) was read 10 seconds after addition.

25

#### Infection Luciferase Assay (Standards)

30

	<u>Compound</u>	<u>% Activation</u>
	17 $\beta$ -estradiol	100% activity
	estriol	38% activity
	tamoxifen	0% activity (10% with 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol)

5 raloxifene 0% activity (0% with 1 nM 17 $\beta$ -estradiol)

**B-Galactosidase Assay**

To the remaining 5  $\mu$ L of lysate 45  $\mu$ L of PBS was added. Then 50  $\mu$ L of Promega B-galactosidase 2X assay buffer was added, mixed well and incubated at 37°C for 1 hour. A plate containing a standard curve (0.1 to 1.5 milliunits in triplicate) was set up for each experimental run. The plates were analyzed on a Molecular Devices spectrophotometric plate reader at 410 nm. The optical densities for the unknown were converted to milliunits of activity by mathematical extrapolation from the standard curve.

**Analysis of Results**

The luciferase data was generated as relative light units (RLUs) accumulated during a 10 second measurement and automatically transferred to a JMP (SAS Inc) file where background RLUs were subtracted. The B-galactosidase values were automatically imported into the file and these values were divided into the RLUs to normalize the data. The mean and standard deviations were determined from a n=8 for each treatment. Compounds activity was compared to 17 $\beta$ -estradiol for each plate. Percentage of activity as compared to 17 $\beta$ -estradiol was calculated using the formula %=((Estradiol-control)/(compound value)) X 100. These techniques are described by Tzukerman, M.T., Esty, A., Santiso-Mere, D., Danielian, P., Parker, M.G., Stein, R.B., Pike, J.W. and McDonnel, D.P. (1994). Human estrogen receptor transactivational capacity was determined by both cellular and promoter context and mediated by two functionally distinct intramolecular regions (see Molecular Endocrinology, 8:21-30).

- 116 -

5

**Table 16****Infection Luciferase Activity**

Example No.	1 uM	1 uM + 17 $\beta$ estradiol
No. 85	-2	43
No. 86	-5	2
No. 87	0	0
No. 88	4	44
No. 89	16	18
No. 90	3	58
No. 91	-3	56
No. 92	-4	-2
No. 93	-3	-2
No. 94	-5	15
No. 95	-4	-4
No. 96	12	8
No. 97	-4	-5
No. 98	5	5
No. 99	5	6
No. 100	9	10
No. 101	14	9
No. 102	9	10
No. 103	13	10
No. 104	7	7
No. 105	5	5
No. 106	10	81
No. 107	-1	54
No. 108	11	10
No. 109	6	5
No. 110	8	10
No. 111	25	23
No. 112	10	10
No. 113	14	16
No. 114	1	-1
No. 115	11	10
No. 116	-1	1
No. 117	0	1
No. 118	N/A	N/A
No. 119	-1	-1
No. 120	-1	1
No. 121	0	1
No. 122	1	5
No. 123	-1	1

5 **Table 16 (Cont'd)**  
**Infection Luciferase Activity**

Example No.	I uM	I uM + 17 $\beta$ estradiol
No. 124	-2	-2
No. 125	-3	-2
No. 126	-1	0
No. 127	-3	-4
No. 132	-5	-2
No. 133	7	9
No. 134	9	5
No. 135	7	3
No. 136	16	10
No. 137	6	8
No. 138	-2	-1
No. 139	-12	-13
No. 160	N/A	N/A
No. 161	N/A	N/A
No. 162	-14	-13
No. 166	25	23
No. 167	4	10
No. 168	3	7

## 10 Method No. 19

## Rat Uterotrophic/Antiuterotrophic Bioassay

The estrogenic and antiestrogenic properties of the compounds were determined in an immature rat uterotrophic assay (4 day) that (as described previously by L.J.Black and R.L.Goode, *Life Sciences*, **26**, 1453 (1980)). Immature Sprague-Dawley rats (female, 18 days old) were tested in groups of six. The animals were treated by daily ip injection with 10 uG compound, 100 uG compound, (100 uG compound + 1 uG 17 $\beta$ -estradiol) to check antiestrogenicity, and 1 uG 17 $\beta$ -estradiol, with 50% DMSO/50% saline as the injection vehicle. On day 4 the animals were sacrificed by CO<sub>2</sub> asphyxiation and their uteri were removed and stripped of excess lipid, any fluid removed and the wet weight determined. A small section of one horn was submitted for histology and the remainder used to isolate total RNA in order to evaluate complement component 3 gene expression.

5

**Table 17****3 Day Rat Immature Uterine Assay**

10	<u>Uterine wt</u> mg	<u>Uterine wt</u> mg	<u>Uterine wt</u> mg	<u>Uterine wt</u> mg
	Example No.	100 uG cmpd	100 uG cmpd + 1uG 17 $\beta$ -estradiol	1uG 17 $\beta$ -estradiol
	Tamoxifen	71.4 mg	N/A	42.7 mg
	No. 85	41.1 mg	92.4 mg	26.6 mg
	No. 94	28.1 mg	93.7 mg	22.3 mg
	No. 97	27.4 mg	24.3 mg	30.7 mg
	No. 98	29.4 mg	27.9 mg	35.9 mg
	No. 100	59.9 mg	68.7 mg	23.4 mg
	No. 101	65.1 mg	71.0 mg	27.7 mg
	No. 122	46.7 mg	38.7 mg	30.3 mg
	No. 123	39.2 mg	61.4 mg	26.1 mg
	No. 138	28.4 mg	37.9 mg	24.6 mg
	No. 139	30.4 mg	45.0 mg	20.5 mg
	No. 168	43.2 mg	81.7 mg	25.5 mg

**Method No. 20****6-Week Ovariectomized Rat Model**

15

Female Sprague Dawley CD rats, ovx or sham ovx, were obtained 1 day after surgery from Taconic Farm (weight range 240 - 275 g). They were housed 3 or 4 rats/cage in a room on a 14/10 (light/dark) schedule and provided with food (Purina 500 rat chow) and water ad libitum. Treatment for all studies began 1 day after the animals arrival and dosed 5 or 7 days per week as indicated for 6 weeks. A group of age matched sham operated rats not receiving any treatment served as an intact, estrogen replete control group for each study. All treatments were prepared in 1% tween 80 in normal saline at defined concentrations so that the treatment volume was 0.1mL/100g body weight. 17-beta estradiol was dissolved in corn oil (20 uG/mL) and delivered subcutaneously, 0.1 mL/rat. All dosages were adjusted at three week intervals according to group mean body weight measurements.

5        Five weeks after the initiation of treatment and one week prior to the termination of the study, each rat was evaluated for bone mineral density (BMD). The BMD's of the proximal tibiae (PT) and fourth lumbar vertabrate (L4) were measured in anesthetized rats using a dual energy X-ray absorptiometer (Eclipse XR-26, Norland Corp. Ft. Atkins, WI). The dual energy X-ray absorptiometer (DXA) measurements  
10      for each rat were performed as follows: Fifteen minutes prior to DXA measurements, the rat was anesthetized with an intraperitoneal injection of 100 mg/kg ketamine (Bristol Laboratories, Syracuse, NY) and 0.75 mg/kg acepromazine (Aveco, Ft. Dodge, IA). The rat was placed on an acrylic table under the DXA scanner perpendicular to its path; the limbs were extended and secured with paper tape to the surface of the table. A  
15      preliminary scan was performed at a scan speed of 50 mm/second with a scan resolution of 1.5 mm X 1.5 mm to determine the region of interest in PT and L4. Small subject software was employed at a scan speed of 10mm/second with resolution of 0.5 mm X 0.5 mm for final BMD measurements. The software allows the operator to define a 1.5 cm wide area to cover the total length of L4. The BMDs for respective  
20      sites were computed by the software as a function of the attenuation of the dual beam (46.8 KeV and 80 KeV) X-ray generated by the source underneath the subject and the detector travelling along the defined area above the subject. The data for BMD values (expressed in g/cm<sup>2</sup>) and individual scans were stored for statistical analysis.  
One week after BMD evaluation the rats were sacrificed by carbon dioxide suffocation  
25      and blood collected for cholesterol determination. The uteri were removed and the weights taken. Total cholesterol is determined using a Boehringer-Mannheim Hitachi 911 clinical analyzer using the Cholesterol/HP kit. Statistics were compared using one-way analysis of variance with Dunnet's test.

- 120 -

5

**Table 18****6-Week Ovariectomized Rat Study Of Example No. 98**

Treatment	BMD (mg/cm <sup>2</sup> ) <sup>a,b</sup>		Body Weight (g) <sup>a,c</sup>	Uterine Weight (mg) <sup>a,c</sup>	Cholesterol (mg/dl) <sup>a,c</sup>
	Proximal Tibia	L <sub>4</sub>			
<b>Study <sup>d</sup></b>					
Sham (Intact)	0.211 <sup>**</sup> ±0.003	0.183 <sup>*</sup> ±0.003	43.0 <sup>*</sup> ±6.0	426.4 <sup>**</sup> ±25.0	71.6 <sup>**</sup> ±5.0
Vehicle (Ovx)	0.189 ±0.004	0.169 ±0.004	62.7 ±8.2	118.2 ±7.8	87.2 ±3.0
<b>Example No. 98</b>					
0.3mg/kg, p.o.	0.210 <sup>**</sup> ±0.003	0.173 ±0.003	46.8 ±6.6	149.3 ±4.4	59.0 <sup>**</sup> ±2.2
Raloxifene 3mg/kg, p.o.	0.207 <sup>**</sup> ±0.006	0.170 ±0.003	25.3 <sup>**</sup> ±5.4	191.6 <sup>**</sup> ±9.3	55.0 <sup>**</sup> ±2.4
17 $\beta$ -Estradiol 2 $\mu$ g/rat, s.c.	0.224 <sup>**</sup> ±0.004	0.169 ±0.004	33.1 <sup>**</sup> ±4.9	426.0 <sup>**</sup> ±18.4	95.5 ±3.9

10

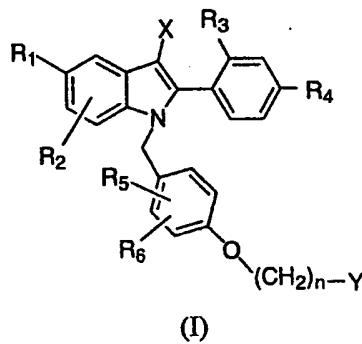
<sup>a</sup> Mean ± SEM<sup>\*</sup>p < 0.05 vs corresponding Vehicle value<sup>b</sup> Following 5 weeks of treatment<sup>\*\*</sup>p < 0.01 vs corresponding Vehicle value<sup>c</sup> Following 6 weeks of treatment<sup>d</sup> Daily treatment x7 days/week x6 weeks

15

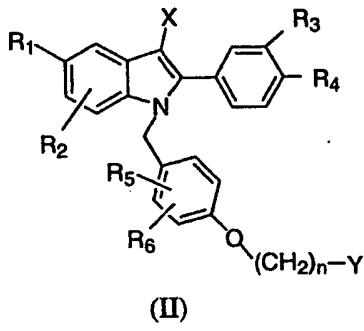
5 **CLAIMS:**

1. A pharmaceutical composition comprising one or more estrogens and a compound having the structure:

10



or



wherein:

15  $R_1$  is selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> esters (straight chain or branched) or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> (straight chain or branched or cyclic) alkyl ethers thereof, or halogens; or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> halogenated ethers including trifluoromethyl ether and trichloromethyl ether.

20  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $R_4$ ,  $R_5$ , and  $R_6$  are independently selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> esters (straight chain or branched) or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkyl ethers (straight chain or branched or cyclic) thereof, halogens, or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> halogenated ethers including trifluoromethyl ether and trichloromethyl ether, cyano, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl (straight chain or branched), or trifluoromethyl, with the proviso that, when  $R_1$  is H,  $R_2$  is not OH.

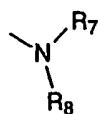
25  $X$  is selected from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, cyano, nitro, trifluoromethyl, halogen;

$n$  is 2 or 3;

$Y$  is selected from:

25

a) the moiety:



wherein  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are independently selected from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or phenyl optionally substituted by CN, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl (straight chain or branched), C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy (straight chain or branched), halogen, -OH, -CF<sub>3</sub> or -OCF<sub>3</sub>; or  $R_7$  and  $R_8$  are 30 concatenated together as -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-, wherein  $p$  is an integer of from 2 to 6, preferably 4

5 to 6, the ring so formed is optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, trifluoromethyl, halogen, hydrogen, phenyl, nitro and -CN

10 b) a five-, six- or seven- membered saturated, unsaturated or partially unsaturated heterocycle containing up to two heteroatoms selected from -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, -N= and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected from hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, wherein R<sub>1</sub> is as defined above or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl ;

20 c) a bicyclic heterocycle containing from 6-12 carbon atoms either bridged or fused and containing up to two heteroatoms selected from -O-, -NH-, -N(C<sub>1</sub>C<sub>4</sub> alkyl)-, and -S(O)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein m is an integer of from 0-2, optionally substituted with 1-3 substituents independently selected hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> acyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN-, -CONHR<sub>1</sub>-, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>1</sub>, -NHCOR<sub>1</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, and phenyl optionally substituted with 1-3 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>) alkyl;

30 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

30

2. A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 wherein:

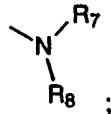
R<sub>1</sub> is selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> esters or alkyl ethers thereof, halogen;

R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and R<sub>6</sub> are independently selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> esters or alkyl ethers thereof, halogen, cyano, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or trifluoromethyl, with the proviso that, when R<sub>1</sub> is H, R<sub>2</sub> is not OH;

X is selected from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, cyano, nitro, trifluoromethyl, halogen;

Y is the moiety

- 123 -



R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are selected independently from H, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or combined by -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>, wherein p is an integer of from 2 to 6, so as to form a ring, the ring being optionally substituted by up to three substituents selected from hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NHCO(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl and -NO<sub>2</sub>;

10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

15

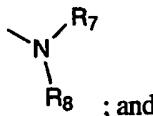
3. A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 wherein:

R<sub>1</sub> is OH;

R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub>, and R<sub>6</sub> are independently selected from H, OH or the C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> esters or alkyl ethers thereof, halogen, cyano, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, or trifluoromethyl, with the proviso that, when R<sub>1</sub> is H, R<sub>2</sub> is not OH;

X is selected from the group of Cl, NO<sub>2</sub>, CN, CF<sub>3</sub>, or CH<sub>3</sub>;

Y is the moiety



25 R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are concatenated together as -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>, wherein r is an integer of from 4 to 6, to form a ring optionally substituted by up to three substituents selected from hydroxyl, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, trihalomethyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkoxy, trihalomethoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylsulfonyl, hydroxy (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>H, -CN, -CONH(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NH<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkylamino, di-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkylamino, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl, -NHCO(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>)alkyl and -NO<sub>2</sub>;

30 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

5        4.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 5-benzyloxy-2-(4-ethoxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-1H-indole or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10      5.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15      6.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 4-{3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-1H-indole} or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20      7.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 4-{5-fluoro-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-1H-indol-2-yl}-phenol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

25      8.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 1-[4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)-benzyl]-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

30      9.    A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-dimethyl-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

35      10.   A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-diethyl-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

11.   A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 2-(4-cyclopenyloxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5        12. A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 3-methyl-1-[4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-2-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10      13. A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-piperidin-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15      14. A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 1 in which the compound is 2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-1-[3-methoxy-4-(2-azepan-1-yl-ethoxy)benzyl]-3-methyl-1H-indol-5-ol or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20      15. A pharmaceutical composition of any one of Claims 1 to 14 wherein the one or more estrogens are selected from equilin, equilenin, estradiene, ethinyl estradiol, 17 $\beta$ -estradiol, 17alpha-dihydroequilenin, 17 $\beta$ -dihydroequilenin, menstranol, conjugated estrogens, estrone, 17alpha-estradiol sulfate, Delta8,9- dehydroestrone, equol or enterolactone; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

25      16. A pharmaceutical composition of Claim 15 wherein the pharmaceutically acceptable salt of the one or more estrogens is a sodium salt.

17. A method of treating or preventing bone loss in a mammal, the method comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount of an estrogen and an effective amount of a compound of any one of Claims 1 to 14, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

30      18. A method of treating or preventing disease states or syndromes which are caused or associated with an estrogen deficiency in a mammal, the method comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount of an estrogen and an effective amount of a compound of any one of Claims 1 to 14, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

35      19. A method of treating or preventing cardiovascular disease in a mammal, the method comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount

- 126 -

5 of an estrogen and an effective amount of a compound of any one of Claims 1 to 14, or  
a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10 20. A method of treating or preventing disease in a mammal which result  
from proliferation or abnormal development, actions or growth of endometrial or  
endometrial-like tissue, the method comprising administering to a mammal in need  
thereof an effective amount of an estrogen and an effective amount of a compound of  
any one of Claims 1 to 14, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15 21. A method of treatment of Claim 20 wherein the disease is  
endometriosis.

20 22. A product comprising one or more estrogens and a compound having  
the structure (I) or (II) as claimed in any one 1 to 14 as a combined preparation for  
simultaneous, separate or sequential use in the treatment or prevention of  
cardiovascular disease, or a disease in a mammal which results from proliferation or  
abnormal development, actions or growth of endometrial or endometrial-like tissue, or  
disease states or syndromes which are caused or associated with an estrogen deficiency

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

International Application No	
PCT/US 99/10217	

<b>A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b>
IPC 6 A61K31/40 A61K31/565

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC
---

<b>B. FIELDS SEARCHED</b>
---------------------------

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 6 A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched
---

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)
--

<b>C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT</b>
---

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
E	WO 99 24027 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 20 May 1999 (1999-05-20) abstract	1-22
X	EP 0 802 183 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 22 October 1997 (1997-10-22) abstract; examples 61,85,97,98,100,101,122,167,168	1-22
P, Y	WO 99 19293 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 22 April 1999 (1999-04-22) abstract; examples 10-15	1-22
Y	EP 0 639 567 A (OTSKA PHARMA CO LTD) 22 February 1995 (1995-02-22) tables 11,13,15,19	1-3, 15-22
	-/-	

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"Z" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
---	--

 14 September 1999 | 28/09/1999 |

Name and mailing address of the ISA	Authorized officer
-------------------------------------	--------------------

 European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2   NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk   Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl.   Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | Gonzalez Ramon, N |

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Interr. Application No  
PCT/US 99/10217

## C(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	EP 0 802 184 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 22 October 1997 (1997-10-22) abstract ----	1-22
Y	DE 44 26 625 A (SCHERING AG) 14 March 1996 (1996-03-14) abstract ----	1-3, 15-22
A	WO 95 17383 A (KAROBIO AB ;NORINDER ULF (SE)) 29 June 1995 (1995-06-29) abstract; claim 1 ----	1-22
Y	KOMM, B. S. ET AL: "The ongoing saga of osteoporosis treatment" J. CELL BIOCHEM. SUPP., vol. 30/31, 1998, pages 277-283, XP002115101 page 279, column 2, paragraph 3 -page 280, column 1 ----	1-22
P, X	WO 99 21557 A (WYVRATT MATTHEW J ;CHU LIN (US); GOULET MARK T (US); MERCK & CO IN) 6 May 1999 (1999-05-06) claims 1,19 ----	1-3, 15-22
A	WO 98 01443 A (NADLER GUY MARGUERITE MARIE GE ;SMITHKLINE BEECHAM LAB (FR); FARIN) 15 January 1998 (1998-01-15) abstract ----	1-22
A	VON ANGERER, ERWIN ET AL: "2-Phenylindoles. Effect of N-benzylation on estrogen receptor affinity, estrogenic properties, and mammary tumor inhibiting activity" J. MED. CHEM: (1987), 30(1), 131-6 , XP002115258 ----	1-22

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

International application No.

PCT/US 99/10217

**Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)**

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
**Remark:** Although claims 17-21 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3.  Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

**Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)**

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1.  As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2.  As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3.  As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4.  No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

**Remark on Protest**

The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.

No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 99/10217

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)		Publication date
WO 9924027 A	20-05-1999	AU	1303199 A	31-05-1999
EP 0802183 A	22-10-1997	AU	1892097 A	23-10-1997
		BR	9701895 A	10-11-1998
		CA	2203079 A	19-10-1997
		CN	1170719 A	21-01-1998
		CZ	9701175 A	12-11-1997
		HU	9700777 A	28-06-1999
		JP	10036346 A	10-02-1998
		NO	971815 A	20-10-1997
		SK	47297 A	05-11-1997
		ZA	9703302 A	19-10-1998
		CA	2203078 A	04-10-1998
WO 9919293 A	22-04-1999	AU	1083199 A	03-05-1999
EP 0639567 A	22-02-1995	AU	665690 B	11-01-1996
		US	5496844 A	05-03-1996
		AU	4271193 A	13-12-1993
		CA	2135160 A	25-11-1993
		WO	9323374 A	25-11-1993
EP 0802184 A	22-10-1997	AU	1892197 A	23-10-1997
		BR	9701879 A	29-09-1998
		CA	2203074 A	19-10-1997
		CN	1168373 A	24-12-1997
		CZ	9701176 A	17-12-1997
		JP	10036347 A	10-02-1998
		NO	971814 A	20-10-1997
		SK	47197 A	05-11-1997
		ZA	9703299 A	19-10-1998
		CA	2203073 A	19-10-1997
DE 4426625 A	14-03-1996	AU	3254595 A	22-02-1996
		CA	2196065 A	08-02-1996
		WO	9603375 A	08-02-1996
		EP	0772591 A	14-05-1997
WO 9517383 A	29-06-1995	AU	1316995 A	10-07-1995
		CA	2187296 A	29-06-1995
		EP	0736008 A	09-10-1996
		JP	9510689 T	28-10-1997
WO 9921557 A	06-05-1999	AU	1197299 A	17-05-1999
WO 9801443 A	15-01-1998	AU	3620597 A	02-02-1998
		EP	0914321 A	12-05-1999
		NO	990080 A	08-01-1999
		PL	330994 A	21-06-1999